

VSG-1200

Vantage Service Gateway

User's Guide

Version 1.08
1/2006

ZyXEL

Copyright

Copyright © 2006 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio/television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Notice 1

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Certifications

Go to www.zyxel.com

- 1 Select your product from the drop-down list box on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 2 Select the certification you wish to view from this page

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Safety Warnings

- 1** To reduce the risk of fire, use only No. 26 AWG or larger telephone wire.
- 2** Do not use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- 3** Avoid using this product during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightening.

Customer Support

Please have the following information ready when you contact customer support.

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

| METHOD | SUPPORT E-MAIL | TELEPHONE ^A | WEB SITE | REGULAR MAIL |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| LOCATION | SALES E-MAIL | FAX | FTP SITE | |
| CORPORATE HEADQUARTERS (WORLDWIDE) | support@zyxel.com.tw | +886-3-578-3942 | www.zyxel.com www.europe.zyxel.com | ZyXEL Communications Corp. 6 Innovation Road II Science Park Hsinchu 300 Taiwan |
| | sales@zyxel.com.tw | +886-3-578-2439 | ftp.zyxel.com ftp.europe.zyxel.com | |
| CZECH REPUBLIC | info@cz.zyxel.com | +420-241-091-350 | www.zyxel.cz | ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o. Modranská 621 143 01 Praha 4 - Modrany Ceská Republika |
| | info@cz.zyxel.com | +420-241-091-359 | | |
| DENMARK | support@zyxel.dk | +45-39-55-07-00 | www.zyxel.dk | ZyXEL Communications A/S Columbusvej 2860 Soeborg Denmark |
| | sales@zyxel.dk | +45-39-55-07-07 | | |
| FINLAND | support@zyxel.fi | +358-9-4780-8411 | www.zyxel.fi | ZyXEL Communications Oy Malminkaari 10 00700 Helsinki Finland |
| | sales@zyxel.fi | +358-9-4780 8448 | | |
| FRANCE | info@zyxel.fr | +33-4-72-52-97-97 | www.zyxel.fr | ZyXEL France 1 rue des Vergers Bat. 1 / C 69760 Limonest France |
| | | +33-4-72-52-19-20 | | |
| GERMANY | support@zyxel.de | +49-2405-6909-0 | www.zyxel.de | ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH. Adenauerstr. 20/A2 D-52146 Wuerselen Germany |
| | sales@zyxel.de | +49-2405-6909-99 | | |
| HUNGARY | support@zyxel.hu | +36-1-3361649 | www.zyxel.hu | ZyXEL Hungary 48, Zoldlomb Str. H-1025, Budapest Hungary |
| | info@zyxel.hu | +36-1-3259100 | | |
| KAZAKHSTAN | http://zyxel.kz/support | +7-3272-590-698 | www.zyxel.kz | ZyXEL Kazakhstan 43, Dostyk ave., Office 414 Dostyk Business Centre 050010, Almaty Republic of Kazakhstan |
| | sales@zyxel.kz | +7-3272-590-689 | | |
| NORTH AMERICA | support@zyxel.com | 1-800-255-4101 +1-714-632-0882 | www.us.zyxel.com | ZyXEL Communications Inc. 1130 N. Miller St. Anaheim CA 92806-2001 U.S.A. |
| | sales@zyxel.com | +1-714-632-0858 | ftp.us.zyxel.com | |
| NORWAY | support@zyxel.no | +47-22-80-61-80 | www.zyxel.no | ZyXEL Communications A/S Niils Hansens vei 13 0667 Oslo Norway |
| | sales@zyxel.no | +47-22-80-61-81 | | |

| METHOD | SUPPORT E-MAIL | TELEPHONE ^A | WEB SITE | REGULAR MAIL |
|----------------|-------------------------|---|------------------|---|
| LOCATION | SALES E-MAIL | FAX | FTP SITE | |
| POLAND | info@pl.zyxel.com | +48-22-5286603 | www.pl.zyxel.com | ZyXEL Communications ul.Emilli Plater 53 00-113 Warszawa Poland |
| | | +48-22-5206701 | | |
| RUSSIA | http://zyxel.ru/support | +7-095-542-89-29 | www.zyxel.ru | ZyXEL Russia Ostrovityanova 37a Str. Moscow, 117279 Russia |
| | sales@zyxel.ru | +7-095-542-89-25 | | |
| SPAIN | support@zyxel.es | +34-902-195-420 | www.zyxel.es | ZyXEL Communications Alejandro Villegas 33 1º, 28043 Madrid Spain |
| | sales@zyxel.es | +34-913-005-345 | | |
| SWEDEN | support@zyxel.se | +46-31-744-7700 | www.zyxel.se | ZyXEL Communications A/S Sjöporten 4, 41764 Göteborg Sweden |
| | sales@zyxel.se | +46-31-744-7701 | | |
| UKRAINE | support@ua.zyxel.com | +380-44-247-69-78 | www.ua.zyxel.com | ZyXEL Ukraine 13, Pimonenko Str. Kiev, 04050 Ukraine |
| | sales@ua.zyxel.com | +380-44-494-49-32 | | |
| UNITED KINGDOM | support@zyxel.co.uk | +44-1344 303044 08707 555779 (UK only) | www.zyxel.co.uk | ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd., 11 The Courtyard, Eastern Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 2XB, United Kingdom (UK) |
| | sales@zyxel.co.uk | +44-1344 303034 | ftp.zyxel.co.uk | |

a. "+" is the (prefix) number you enter to make an international telephone call.

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Copyright | 2 |
| Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement | 3 |
| ZyXEL Limited Warranty | 4 |
| Safety Warnings | 5 |
| Customer Support..... | 6 |
| List of Figures | 17 |
| List of Tables | 23 |
| Preface | 27 |
| Chapter 1 | |
| Getting to Know Your VSG | 29 |
| 1.1 Introducing the VSG | 29 |
| 1.2 Features | 29 |
| 1.3 Applications | 33 |
| 1.3.1 Internet Access for LAN Networks | 33 |
| 1.3.2 Internet Access in Public Areas | 33 |
| 1.3.3 Hotel Application with PMS | 34 |
| Chapter 2 | |
| Hardware Installation and Connection..... | 35 |
| 2.1 Installation Options | 35 |
| 2.1.1 Desktop Installation | 35 |
| 2.1.2 Rack Mount Installation | 35 |
| 2.2 Hardware Connections | 36 |
| 2.2.1 Front Panel | 36 |
| 2.2.1.1 Four LAN 10/100M Ports | 37 |
| 2.2.1.2 The WAN Port | 37 |
| 2.2.1.3 The Console Port | 37 |
| 2.2.1.4 The PMS Port | 37 |
| 2.2.1.5 The Reset Button | 38 |
| 2.2.2 Front Panel LEDs | 38 |
| 2.2.3 Rear Panel | 38 |

| | |
|---|-----------|
| 2.2.4 Turning on the VSG | 39 |
| 2.2.5 Methods of Restoring Factory Defaults | 39 |
| Chapter 3 | |
| The Web Configurator..... | 41 |
| 3.1 Introducing the Web Configurator | 41 |
| 3.2 Accessing the Web Configurator | 41 |
| 3.3 The Navigation Panels | 43 |
| 3.3.1 The Configuration Menu Panel | 43 |
| 3.3.2 Screen Specific Link Panel | 43 |
| 3.4 Screen Overview | 44 |
| 3.5 General System Setting | 44 |
| 3.6 System Login Accounts | 47 |
| 3.7 Changing System Login Passwords | 48 |
| 3.8 Restarting the VSG | 50 |
| 3.9 Logging Out of the Web Configurator | 51 |
| Chapter 4 | |
| LAN, WAN and Server Setup..... | 53 |
| 4.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults | 53 |
| 4.2 LANs and WANs | 53 |
| 4.3 IP Address Assignment | 53 |
| 4.4 DHCP Configuration | 53 |
| 4.4.1 IP Address and Subnet Mask | 54 |
| 4.4.2 Private IP Addresses | 54 |
| 4.5 DNS Server Address | 55 |
| 4.6 LAN Configuration | 55 |
| 4.7 WAN Configuration | 56 |
| 4.7.1 Configuring WAN MAC Address | 56 |
| 4.7.2 MTU | 57 |
| 4.7.3 WAN IP Address Settings | 57 |
| 4.7.4 PPPoE | 58 |
| 4.7.5 PPTP | 60 |
| 4.8 Server Configuration | 61 |
| Chapter 5 | |
| NAT Pool | 65 |
| 5.1 NAT Introduction | 65 |
| 5.1.1 NAT Definitions | 65 |
| 5.1.2 What NAT Does | 66 |
| 5.1.3 How NAT Works | 66 |
| 5.2 VPN and NAT | 66 |
| 5.3 NAT Examples | 67 |

| | |
|--|-----------|
| 5.3.1 Example 1: One-to-One | 67 |
| 5.3.2 Example 2: Many-to-One | 68 |
| 5.3.3 Example 3: One-to-One and Many-to-One | 68 |
| 5.4 Configuring NAT Pool | 69 |
| Chapter 6 | |
| Authentication | 71 |
| 6.1 Authentication Overview | 71 |
| 6.1.1 User Agreement | 71 |
| 6.1.2 CAS (Central Authentication Service) | 71 |
| 6.1.3 Accounting Methods | 72 |
| 6.1.4 Built-in Authentication | 72 |
| 6.1.5 RADIUS | 72 |
| 6.1.5.1 RADIUS Accounting | 72 |
| 6.1.5.2 Vendor Specific Attribute | 73 |
| 6.2 Authentication Settings | 73 |
| 6.2.1 Scenario Options | 76 |
| Chapter 7 | |
| Billing Profiles and PMS Configuration | 79 |
| 7.1 About Billing Profiles | 79 |
| 7.1.1 Creating a Billing Profile | 79 |
| 7.1.2 Editing a Billing Profile | 80 |
| 7.2 PMS (Property Management System) | 82 |
| 7.2.1 Port-Location Mapping Charge Modes | 82 |
| 7.2.2 PMS Configuration | 83 |
| 7.3 Types of Subscriber Accounts | 84 |
| Chapter 8 | |
| Static Subscriber Accounts..... | 85 |
| 8.1 About Static Subscriber Accounts | 85 |
| 8.2 Global Static Account Settings | 85 |
| 8.3 Creating a Static Account | 86 |
| 8.3.1 Generating Static Accounts Automatically | 87 |
| 8.3.2 Creating Static Subscriber Accounts Manually | 88 |
| 8.4 Static Account List Backup and Restore | 89 |
| 8.4.1 Backing Up a Static Account List | 89 |
| 8.4.2 Restoring a Static Account List | 91 |
| 8.5 Editing Subscriber Accounts | 92 |
| 8.5.1 Static Account Information Print Preview | 93 |
| 8.6 Viewing the Static Account List | 94 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Chapter 9 | |
| Dynamic Subscriber Accounts | 95 |
| 9.1 About Dynamic Subscriber Accounts | 95 |
| 9.2 Dynamic Account General Settings | 95 |
| 9.3 Creating Dynamic Accounts | 97 |
| 9.3.1 Dynamic Account Generation Using the Web Configurator | 97 |
| 9.3.2 Dynamic Account Generation Using a Statement Printer | 98 |
| 9.4 Viewing the Dynamic Account List | 99 |
| 9.4.1 Backing Up the Dynamic Account List | 100 |
| | |
| Chapter 10 | |
| Port-Location Mapping | 103 |
| 10.1 About Port-Location Mapping | 103 |
| 10.2 Configuring Port-Location Mapping | 103 |
| | |
| Chapter 11 | |
| Credit Card Billing and Customization | 107 |
| 11.1 Credit Card Billing Overview | 107 |
| 11.1.1 How Credit Card Billing Works | 107 |
| 11.1.2 Configuration Steps | 107 |
| 11.2 Setting up Credit Card Billing Service | 108 |
| 11.3 Customizing Subscriber Credit Card Information Screen | 109 |
| 11.3.1 Subscriber Standard Login Page Message | 109 |
| 11.3.2 Service Selection Page | 110 |
| 11.3.3 Successful Screen | 113 |
| 11.3.4 Fail Page | 115 |
| | |
| Chapter 12 | |
| Subscriber Login Screen..... | 117 |
| 12.1 About the Subscriber Login Screen | 117 |
| 12.2 Customizing Subscriber Login Screen | 117 |
| 12.2.1 Standard Subscriber Login Screen | 118 |
| 12.2.2 Redirect Subscriber Login Screen | 120 |
| 12.2.3 Advanced Subscriber Login Screen | 121 |
| 12.2.4 Frame Subscriber Login Screen | 122 |
| 12.2.5 Service Selection Messages | 123 |
| | |
| Chapter 13 | |
| Subscriber Information Window | 125 |
| 13.1 About the Information Window | 125 |
| 13.1.1 Customizing the Information Window | 125 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Chapter 14 | |
| Account Printout | 129 |
| 14.1 About the Account Printout | 129 |
| 14.1.1 Customizing the Account Printout | 129 |
| Chapter 15 | |
| User Agreement Page | 137 |
| 15.1 About the User Agreement Page | 137 |
| 15.2 Customizing the User Agreement Page | 137 |
| Chapter 16 | |
| Bandwidth Management | 141 |
| 16.1 Bandwidth Management Overview | 141 |
| 16.1.1 Bandwidth Allocation | 141 |
| 16.1.2 Configuring Equal Share Bandwidth Management | 142 |
| 16.1.3 Configuring Class of Service Bandwidth Management | 143 |
| Chapter 17 | |
| Portal Page, Advertisement Link and Walled Garden | 145 |
| 17.1 Introduction | 145 |
| 17.2 Portal Page | 145 |
| 17.3 Advertisement Links | 146 |
| 17.4 Walled Garden | 147 |
| Chapter 18 | |
| Passthrough | 149 |
| 18.1 About the Passthrough | 149 |
| 18.2 Configuring Passthrough | 149 |
| 18.2.1 Subscriber Computer Passthrough | 149 |
| 18.2.2 Destination URL and IP Address Passthrough | 151 |
| Chapter 19 | |
| LAN Devices | 153 |
| 19.1 LAN Devices and NAT Overview | 153 |
| 19.1.1 Port Mapping | 153 |
| 19.2 Configuring LAN Device Port Mapping | 153 |
| 19.2.1 LAN Device Management Example | 155 |
| 19.2.2 Specifying an Inside Server Example | 156 |
| Chapter 20 | |
| Static Route | 159 |
| 20.1 Static Route Overview | 159 |
| 20.2 The Static Route Screen | 159 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Chapter 21 | |
| Syslog and Session Trace | 163 |
| 21.1 Syslog | 163 |
| 21.1.1 Syslog Server Setup | 163 |
| 21.1.2 Configure Log Settings | 164 |
| 21.2 Session Trace | 167 |
| 21.2.1 Configuring Session Trace | 167 |
| 21.2.1.1 Session Trace Filename Convention | 168 |
| | |
| Chapter 22 | |
| SNMP | 171 |
| 22.1 SNMP Overview | 171 |
| 22.1.1 Network Management System (NMS) | 172 |
| 22.2 Configuring SNMP | 172 |
| | |
| Chapter 23 | |
| MAC Filter | 175 |
| 23.1 About the MAC Filter | 175 |
| 23.2 Configuring the MAC Filter | 175 |
| | |
| Chapter 24 | |
| System Status..... | 177 |
| 24.1 About System Status | 177 |
| 24.2 View System Information | 177 |
| 24.3 Current User List | 180 |
| 24.4 DHCP Clients | 181 |
| 24.5 Session List | 181 |
| 24.6 NAT Pool Table | 182 |
| 24.7 LAN Device Status | 183 |
| 24.7.1 Accessing the LAN Device | 184 |
| 24.8 Billing Logs | 184 |
| 24.8.1 Billing Logs Backup | 185 |
| 24.9 PMS Transaction | 187 |
| 24.10 Static Route Table | 187 |
| | |
| Chapter 25 | |
| Secure Socket Layer..... | 189 |
| 25.1 About SSL | 189 |
| 25.1.1 Certificate | 189 |
| 25.1.2 Certificate Authorities | 189 |
| 25.2 Downloading SSL Certificate to the VSG | 189 |
| 25.3 Activating SSL Security | 190 |
| 25.4 Installing SSL Certificate on a Computer | 193 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Chapter 26 | |
| The SMT | 199 |
| 26.1 Introduction to the SMT | 199 |
| 26.1.1 Establishing a Console Port Connection | 199 |
| 26.2 SMT Login Screen | 200 |
| 26.3 The SMT Main Menu Summary | 201 |
| 26.4 Navigating the SMT Interface | 201 |
| 26.4.1 The Navigation Keys | 202 |
| 26.5 General System Setup | 202 |
| 26.6 Changing the System Password | 203 |
| 26.7 Restarting the VSG | 204 |
| 26.8 Reset the VSG to Factory Defaults | 204 |
| | |
| Chapter 27 | |
| LAN and WAN Setup Using the SMT | 207 |
| 27.1 LAN and WAN Overview | 207 |
| 27.2 WAN Configuration | 207 |
| 27.2.1 Using a Static/Dynamic WAN IP Address | 207 |
| 27.2.2 PPPoE Support | 208 |
| 27.2.3 PPTP Support | 209 |
| 27.3 LAN Configuration | 211 |
| 27.4 View Current Configuration | 212 |
| | |
| Chapter 28 | |
| Configuration and Firmware Maintenance | 215 |
| 28.1 Filename Convention | 215 |
| 28.2 Firmware Upgrade | 215 |
| 28.2.1 Firmware Upgrade Using the Web Configurator | 215 |
| 28.2.1.1 Manual Firmware Upgrade | 216 |
| 28.2.1.2 Manual Firmware Upgrade via a TFTP Server | 216 |
| 28.2.1.3 Scheduled Firmware Upgrade | 217 |
| 28.2.2 Firmware Upgrade Using SMT | 219 |
| 28.3 Configuration File Maintenance | 220 |
| 28.3.1 Backup Configuration Using HTTP | 220 |
| 28.3.2 Backup Configuration Using TFTP | 222 |
| 28.3.3 Restore Configuration Using HTTP | 223 |
| 28.3.4 Restore Configuration Using TFTP | 224 |
| | |
| Chapter 29 | |
| Troubleshooting | 227 |
| 29.1 Using the LEDs to Diagnose Problems | 227 |
| 29.1.1 The Power LED | 227 |
| 29.1.2 The LAN Port LEDs | 227 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| 29.1.3 The WAN Port LEDs | 228 |
| 29.2 The Console Port | 228 |
| 29.3 Web Configurator | 229 |
| 29.4 Internet Access | 229 |
| 29.5 The Statement Printer | 230 |
| Appendix A | |
| Product Specifications | 231 |
| Appendix B | |
| IP Address Assignment Conflicts..... | 233 |
| Appendix C | |
| Subscriber Login..... | 237 |
| Appendix D | |
| Vendor Specific Attributes | 239 |
| Appendix E | |
| Report Printing Using the SP-200..... | 243 |
| Appendix F | |
| Cable Types and Cable Pin Assignments | 249 |
| Appendix G | |
| Setting up Your Computer's IP Address | 253 |
| Appendix H | |
| IP Subnetting..... | 265 |
| Index..... | 273 |

List of Figures

| | | |
|-----------|--|----|
| Figure 1 | Application: Internet Access for LAN Networks | 33 |
| Figure 2 | Application: Internet Access in Public Areas | 33 |
| Figure 3 | Application: Hotel | 34 |
| Figure 4 | Rack Mount: Attaching Brackets | 36 |
| Figure 5 | Rack Mount: Securing to the Rack | 36 |
| Figure 6 | Front Panel | 37 |
| Figure 7 | Rear Panel | 38 |
| Figure 8 | Entering IP Address in Internet Explorer | 41 |
| Figure 9 | Web Configurator: Login | 42 |
| Figure 10 | Web Configurator: Main Menu | 42 |
| Figure 11 | Navigation Panel | 43 |
| Figure 12 | Navigation Panels: Screen specific Link Panel | 43 |
| Figure 13 | System Setting: System | 45 |
| Figure 14 | System Tools: System Account | 48 |
| Figure 15 | System Tools: Reset | 50 |
| Figure 16 | System Tools: Restart | 50 |
| Figure 17 | System Tools: Logging Out | 51 |
| Figure 18 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: LAN Configuration | 55 |
| Figure 19 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN MAC Address | 56 |
| Figure 20 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN IP | 57 |
| Figure 21 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPPoE | 59 |
| Figure 22 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPTP | 60 |
| Figure 23 | System Setting: Server | 62 |
| Figure 24 | NAT Example: One-to-One | 67 |
| Figure 25 | NAT Example: Many-to-One | 68 |
| Figure 26 | NAT Example: One-to-One and Many-to-One | 68 |
| Figure 27 | System Setting: NAT Pool | 69 |
| Figure 28 | CAS Example | 71 |
| Figure 29 | System Setting: Authentication | 74 |
| Figure 30 | System: Authentication: Scenario Guide | 77 |
| Figure 31 | Subscriber Login: Scenario A | 78 |
| Figure 32 | Subscriber Login: Scenario B | 78 |
| Figure 33 | Subscriber Login: Scenario C | 78 |
| Figure 34 | System Setting: Billing: Billing Profile | 80 |
| Figure 35 | System Setting: Billing: Billing Profile Setting | 81 |
| Figure 36 | System Setting: Billing: PMS Configuration | 83 |
| Figure 37 | Static Account: Links | 85 |
| Figure 38 | Static Account Settings: Global Settings | 85 |

| | | |
|-----------|---|-----|
| Figure 39 | System Setting: Create Static Subscriber Account | 87 |
| Figure 40 | Create Static Subscriber Account: Generate Automatically | 88 |
| Figure 41 | Create Static Subscriber Account: Manual | 89 |
| Figure 42 | Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore | 90 |
| Figure 43 | Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore: File Download | 90 |
| Figure 44 | Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore: Save As | 91 |
| Figure 45 | Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore | 91 |
| Figure 46 | Static Account Operator | 92 |
| Figure 47 | Static Account Information Printout Example | 93 |
| Figure 48 | Static Account List | 94 |
| Figure 49 | Dynamic Account: Links | 95 |
| Figure 50 | Accounting: Dynamic Account Setting | 96 |
| Figure 51 | SP-200 Button Labels | 97 |
| Figure 52 | Dynamic Account Operator Panel | 98 |
| Figure 53 | Dynamic Account Information Printout Example | 98 |
| Figure 54 | Dynamic Account List | 99 |
| Figure 55 | Dynamic Account List Backup: File Download | 100 |
| Figure 56 | Dynamic Account List Backup: Save As | 101 |
| Figure 57 | System Setting: Port-Location Mapping | 104 |
| Figure 58 | Advanced Setting: Credit Card | 108 |
| Figure 59 | Credit Card Customization: Standard Login Screen Message | 110 |
| Figure 60 | Credit Card Customization: Standard Login Screen Message: Preview | 110 |
| Figure 61 | Credit Card Customization: Service Selection Page | 111 |
| Figure 62 | Credit Card Customization: Service Selection Page: Preview | 113 |
| Figure 63 | Credit Card Customization: Successful Page | 114 |
| Figure 64 | Credit Card Customization: Successful Page: Preview | 115 |
| Figure 65 | Credit Card Customization: Fail Page | 115 |
| Figure 66 | Credit Card Customization: Fail Page: Preview | 116 |
| Figure 67 | Customization: Login | 118 |
| Figure 68 | Customization: Login: Standard | 119 |
| Figure 69 | Subscriber Login Screen Example: Standard | 120 |
| Figure 70 | Customization: Login Screen: Redirect | 120 |
| Figure 71 | Customization: Login Screen: Advanced | 121 |
| Figure 72 | Subscriber Login Screen Example: Advanced | 122 |
| Figure 73 | Customization: Login Screen: Frame | 122 |
| Figure 74 | Subscriber Login Screen Example: Frame | 123 |
| Figure 75 | Customization: Service Selection Customization | 124 |
| Figure 76 | Subscriber Login Screen Example: Service Selection Messages | 124 |
| Figure 77 | Customization: Information Window | 126 |
| Figure 78 | Subscriber Pop-up Information Window Example | 127 |
| Figure 79 | Customization: Account Printout | 130 |
| Figure 80 | Static Account Printout Example | 132 |
| Figure 81 | Static Account with PMS Billing Printout Example | 132 |

| | | |
|------------|---|-----|
| Figure 82 | Static Account Printout: Statement Printer Example | 133 |
| Figure 83 | Static Account with PMS Billing Printout: Statement Printer Example | 134 |
| Figure 84 | Dynamic Account Printout Example | 134 |
| Figure 85 | Dynamic Account Printout: Statement Printer Example | 135 |
| Figure 86 | Customization: User Agreement Page | 138 |
| Figure 87 | User Agreement Page Example | 139 |
| Figure 88 | Bandwidth Management: Activate | 142 |
| Figure 89 | Bandwidth Management: Equal Share | 142 |
| Figure 90 | Bandwidth Management: Class of Service | 143 |
| Figure 91 | Portal Page | 145 |
| Figure 92 | Advertisement | 146 |
| Figure 93 | Walled Garden | 147 |
| Figure 94 | Subscriber Login Screen with Walled Garden Links Example | 148 |
| Figure 95 | Passthrough: Subscriber IP and MAC Address | 150 |
| Figure 96 | Passthrough: Destination URL and IP | 151 |
| Figure 97 | LAN Devices | 154 |
| Figure 98 | LAN Device Remote Management Example 1 | 155 |
| Figure 99 | LAN Devices: Example 1 | 156 |
| Figure 100 | LAN Device Remote Management Example 2 | 156 |
| Figure 101 | LAN Devices: Example 2 | 156 |
| Figure 102 | Sample Static Routing Topology | 159 |
| Figure 103 | Advanced: Static Route | 160 |
| Figure 104 | Logs: Syslog | 163 |
| Figure 105 | Logs: Log Settings | 165 |
| Figure 106 | Advanced: Session Trace | 168 |
| Figure 107 | Session Trace Information Example | 169 |
| Figure 108 | SNMP Management Model | 171 |
| Figure 109 | SNMP | 172 |
| Figure 110 | MAC Filter | 175 |
| Figure 111 | System Status | 178 |
| Figure 112 | Current User List | 180 |
| Figure 113 | DHCP Clients | 181 |
| Figure 114 | Session List | 182 |
| Figure 115 | NAT Pool Table | 182 |
| Figure 116 | System Status: LAN Device Status | 183 |
| Figure 117 | System Status: Billing Log | 185 |
| Figure 118 | Billing Log Backup: File Download | 186 |
| Figure 119 | Billing Log Backup: Save As | 186 |
| Figure 120 | Billing Log Backup: Example File Content | 187 |
| Figure 121 | System Status: PMS Transaction Log | 187 |
| Figure 122 | System Status: Static Route Table | 188 |
| Figure 123 | SSL Certificate Download | 190 |
| Figure 124 | System Setting: Server Configuration: Enable SSL Security | 191 |

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Figure 125 | System Setting: Authentication: Activate SSL Login | 192 |
| Figure 126 | Installing the SSL Security Certificate: First Security Alert | 193 |
| Figure 127 | Installing the SSL Security Certificate: Second Security Alert | 193 |
| Figure 128 | Installing the SSL Security Certificate: View Certificate | 194 |
| Figure 129 | Installing the SSL Security Certificate: Certificate Import Wizard | 194 |
| Figure 130 | Certificate Import Wizard: Location | 195 |
| Figure 131 | Certificate Import Wizard: Finish | 195 |
| Figure 132 | Root Certificate Store | 196 |
| Figure 133 | Certificate Import Wizard | 196 |
| Figure 134 | Certificate: Detailed Information | 196 |
| Figure 135 | Security Alert: Trusted | 197 |
| Figure 136 | HyperTerminal Communication Parameter Settings Example | 200 |
| Figure 137 | SMT: Login Screen | 200 |
| Figure 138 | SMT: Main Menu | 201 |
| Figure 139 | SMT: System Configuration | 202 |
| Figure 140 | SMT: Change Administrator Password | 203 |
| Figure 141 | SMT: Restart | 204 |
| Figure 142 | SMT: Reset to Factory Defaults | 205 |
| Figure 143 | SMT: WAN Configuration: Static or Dynamic IP Address | 207 |
| Figure 144 | SMT: WAN Configuration: PPPoE | 208 |
| Figure 145 | SMT: WAN Configuration: PPTP | 210 |
| Figure 146 | SMT: LAN Configuration | 211 |
| Figure 147 | SMT: System Status | 212 |
| Figure 148 | Firmware Upgrade: Links | 216 |
| Figure 149 | Firmware Upgrade: Manual | 216 |
| Figure 150 | Web Configurator: Firmware Upgrade Successful | 216 |
| Figure 151 | Firmware Upgrade: Manual Using a TFTP Server | 217 |
| Figure 152 | Synchronization File Example | 217 |
| Figure 153 | Scheduled Firmware Upgrade Example | 218 |
| Figure 154 | Firmware Upgrade: Scheduled | 218 |
| Figure 155 | SMT: Utilities Main Menu | 219 |
| Figure 156 | SMT: Firmware Upgrade | 220 |
| Figure 157 | SMT: Firmware Upgrade Process | 220 |
| Figure 158 | System Tools: Configuration: Backup | 221 |
| Figure 159 | Configuration Backup: File Download | 221 |
| Figure 160 | Configuration Backup: Save As | 222 |
| Figure 161 | System Tools: Configuration: Backup using TFTP | 223 |
| Figure 162 | Configuration Backup: TFTP: Successful | 223 |
| Figure 163 | System Tools: Configuration: Restore | 224 |
| Figure 164 | System Tools: Configuration: Restore: TFTP | 225 |
| Figure 165 | IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 1 | 233 |
| Figure 166 | IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 2 | 233 |
| Figure 167 | IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 3 | 234 |

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Figure 168 | IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 4 | 235 |
| Figure 169 | Subscriber Login Screen: Framed Example | 237 |
| Figure 170 | Subscriber Login: Information Window Example | 237 |
| Figure 171 | SP-200: Daily Account | 244 |
| Figure 172 | SP-200: Monthly Account | 245 |
| Figure 173 | SP-200: System Status | 246 |
| Figure 174 | SP-200: Network Statistics | 247 |
| Figure 175 | WAN Port Cable Pin Assignments | 250 |
| Figure 176 | LAN Port Cable Pin Assignments | 250 |
| Figure 177 | DB25 Male to DB9 Male Connector | 251 |
| Figure 178 | Windows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration | 254 |
| Figure 179 | Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address | 255 |
| Figure 180 | Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration | 256 |
| Figure 181 | Windows XP: Start Menu | 257 |
| Figure 182 | Windows XP: Control Panel | 257 |
| Figure 183 | Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties | 258 |
| Figure 184 | Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties | 258 |
| Figure 185 | Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings | 259 |
| Figure 186 | Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties | 260 |
| Figure 187 | Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu | 261 |
| Figure 188 | Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP | 261 |
| Figure 189 | Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu | 262 |
| Figure 190 | Macintosh OS X: Network | 263 |

List of Tables

| | | |
|----------|--|-----|
| Table 1 | Front Panel LEDs | 38 |
| Table 2 | Web Configurator Screen Overview | 44 |
| Table 3 | System Setting: System | 46 |
| Table 4 | System Tools: System Account | 49 |
| Table 5 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: LAN Configuration | 55 |
| Table 6 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN MAC Address | 56 |
| Table 7 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN IP | 57 |
| Table 8 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPPoE | 59 |
| Table 9 | System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPTP | 61 |
| Table 10 | System Setting: Server | 62 |
| Table 11 | NAT Definitions | 65 |
| Table 12 | WAN NAT Mapping Types for VPN | 67 |
| Table 13 | NAT Example: One-to-One | 67 |
| Table 14 | NAT Example: Many-to-One | 68 |
| Table 15 | NAT Example: One-to-One and Many-to-One | 69 |
| Table 16 | System Setting: NAT Pool | 70 |
| Table 17 | System Setting: Authentication | 75 |
| Table 18 | System: Authentication: Scenario Guide | 78 |
| Table 19 | System Setting: Billing: Billing Profile | 80 |
| Table 20 | System Setting: Billing: Billing Profile Setting | 81 |
| Table 21 | System Setting: Billing: PMS Configuration | 84 |
| Table 22 | Static Account Settings: Global Settings | 86 |
| Table 23 | Create Static Subscriber Account: Generate Automatically | 88 |
| Table 24 | Create Static Subscriber Account: Manual | 89 |
| Table 25 | Static Account Operator | 92 |
| Table 26 | Static Account List | 94 |
| Table 27 | Accounting: Dynamic Account Setting | 96 |
| Table 28 | Dynamic Account List | 99 |
| Table 29 | System Setting: Port-Location Mapping | 104 |
| Table 30 | Advanced Setting: Credit Card | 108 |
| Table 31 | Credit Card Customization: Service Selection Page | 112 |
| Table 32 | Credit Card Customization: Successful Page | 114 |
| Table 33 | Credit Card Customization: Fail Page | 116 |
| Table 34 | Customization: Login: Standard | 119 |
| Table 35 | Customization: Login Screen: Redirect | 120 |
| Table 36 | Customization: Login Screen: Advanced | 121 |
| Table 37 | Customization: Login Screen: Frame | 123 |
| Table 38 | Customization: Service Selection Customization | 124 |

| | | |
|----------|--|-----|
| Table 39 | Customization: Information Window | 126 |
| Table 40 | Customization: Account Printout | 131 |
| Table 41 | Customization: User Agreement Page | 138 |
| Table 42 | Bandwidth Management: Equal Share | 143 |
| Table 43 | Portal Page | 145 |
| Table 44 | Advertisement | 146 |
| Table 45 | Walled Garden | 148 |
| Table 46 | Passthrough: Subscriber IP and MAC Address | 150 |
| Table 47 | Passthrough: Destination URL and IP | 152 |
| Table 48 | LAN Devices | 154 |
| Table 49 | Advanced: Static Route | 160 |
| Table 50 | Logs: Syslog | 163 |
| Table 51 | Logs: Log Settings | 166 |
| Table 52 | Logs: Log Format | 166 |
| Table 53 | Advanced: Session Trace | 168 |
| Table 54 | Session Trace File Fields | 169 |
| Table 55 | SNMP | 173 |
| Table 56 | MAC Filter | 176 |
| Table 57 | System Status | 178 |
| Table 58 | Current User List | 180 |
| Table 59 | DHCP Clients | 181 |
| Table 60 | Session List | 182 |
| Table 61 | NAT Pool Table | 183 |
| Table 62 | System Status: LAN Device Status | 183 |
| Table 63 | System Status: Billing Log | 185 |
| Table 64 | System Status: Static Route Table | 188 |
| Table 65 | SSL Certificate Download | 190 |
| Table 66 | SMT: Main Menu | 201 |
| Table 67 | SMT: Control Key Descriptions | 202 |
| Table 68 | SMT: System Configuration | 202 |
| Table 69 | SMT: WAN Configuration: Static or Dynamic IP Address | 208 |
| Table 70 | SMT: WAN Configuration: PPPoE | 209 |
| Table 71 | SMT: WAN Configuration: PPTP | 210 |
| Table 72 | SMT: LAN Configuration | 211 |
| Table 73 | SMT: System Status | 213 |
| Table 74 | Firmware Upgrade: Scheduled | 218 |
| Table 75 | Troubleshooting the Power LED | 227 |
| Table 76 | Troubleshooting the LAN LED | 227 |
| Table 77 | Troubleshooting the WAN LED | 228 |
| Table 78 | Troubleshooting Console Port | 228 |
| Table 79 | Troubleshooting Web Configurator | 229 |
| Table 80 | Troubleshooting Internet Browser Display | 229 |
| Table 81 | Troubleshooting Internet Access | 229 |

| | | |
|-----------|--|-----|
| Table 82 | Troubleshooting the Statement Printer | 230 |
| Table 83 | Product Specifications: General | 231 |
| Table 84 | Product Specifications: Performance and Management | 232 |
| Table 85 | Product Specifications: Physical and Environmental | 232 |
| Table 86 | VSG-1200 Supported VSAs | 240 |
| Table 87 | VSA-related Error Messages | 241 |
| Table 88 | SP-200: Report Printing Key Combination | 244 |
| Table 89 | SP-200: System Status | 246 |
| Table 90 | SP-200: Network Statistics | 248 |
| Table 91 | Network Cable Types | 249 |
| Table 92 | WAN Port Cable Ping Assignments | 249 |
| Table 93 | LAN Port Cable Pin Assignments | 250 |
| Table 94 | Console Port Pin Assignment | 251 |
| Table 95 | DB25 Male to DB9 Male Connector Ping Assignment | 251 |
| Table 96 | Classes of IP Addresses | 265 |
| Table 97 | Allowed IP Address Range By Class | 266 |
| Table 98 | “Natural” Masks | 266 |
| Table 99 | Alternative Subnet Mask Notation | 267 |
| Table 100 | Two Subnets Example | 267 |
| Table 101 | Subnet 1 | 268 |
| Table 102 | Subnet 2 | 268 |
| Table 103 | Subnet 1 | 269 |
| Table 104 | Subnet 2 | 269 |
| Table 105 | Subnet 3 | 269 |
| Table 106 | Subnet 4 | 270 |
| Table 107 | Eight Subnets | 270 |
| Table 108 | Class C Subnet Planning | 270 |
| Table 109 | Class B Subnet Planning | 271 |

Preface

Congratulations on your purchase of the VSG-1200 Vantage Service Gateway. Your VSG-1200 is easy to install and configure.

About This User's Guide

This manual is designed to guide you through the configuration of your VSG-1200 for its various applications. The web configurator parts of this guide contain background information on features configurable by web configurator. The SMT parts of this guide contain background information solely on features not configurable by web configurator.



Note: Use the web configurator or System Management Terminal (SMT) to configure your VSG-1200. Not all features can be configured through all interfaces.

Related Documentation

- Supporting Disk

Refer to the included CD for support documents.

- ZyXEL Glossary and Web Site

Please refer to www.zyxel.com for an online glossary of networking terms and additional support documentation.












User Guide Feedback

Help us help you. E-mail all User Guide-related comments, questions or suggestions for improvement to techwriters@zyxel.com.tw or send regular mail to The Technical Writing Team, ZyXEL Communications Corp., 6 Innovation Road II, Science-Based Industrial Park, Hsinchu, 300, Taiwan. Thank you!

Syntax Conventions

- “Enter” means for you to type one or more characters. “Select” or “Choose” means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- Command and arrow keys are enclosed in square brackets. [ENTER] means the Enter, or carriage return key; [ESC] means the Escape key and [SPACE BAR] means the Space Bar.
- Mouse action sequences are denoted using a comma. For example, “click the Apple icon, **Control Panels** and then **Modem**” means first click the Apple icon, then point your mouse pointer to **Control Panels** and then click **Modem**.
- “e.g.,” is a shorthand for “for instance”, and “i.e.,” means “that is” or “in other words”.
- The VSG-1200 Vantage Service Gateway may be referred to as the VSG-1200 or, simply, as the VSG in this User's Guide.

Graphics Icons Key

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>Vantage Service Gateway</p>  | <p>Computer</p>  | <p>Notebook computer</p>  |
| <p>Server</p>  | <p>DSLAM</p>  | <p>Firewall</p>  |
| <p>Telephone</p>  | <p>Switch</p>  | <p>Router</p>  |
| <p>Statement Printer (SP-200)</p>  | <p>Access Point</p>  | |

CHAPTER 1

Getting to Know Your VSG

This chapter introduces the features and applications of the VSG.

1.1 Introducing the VSG

The VSG (Vantage Service Gateway) is a rack-mountable Internet Service Gateway that provides multiple subscribers easy Internet connectivity. The VSG is ideal for office, hotspot and hotel environments.

Hotspots are public areas, such as airports, hotels, coffee shops, where end users (or subscribers) can access the Internet at any time.

1.2 Features

Your VSG provides the following features to accommodate subscribers with a variety of network configurations with little or no technical support.

Automatic Account Billing with Property Management System (PMS)

Many hotels use a PMS to perform in-room billing of services the guests use such as room service, mini-bar, pay-per-view TV or telephone usage. The VSG supports PMS from Micros Fidelios.

CAS (Central Authentication Service)

The Hilton Group Corporation developed the High Speed Internet Access (HSIA) service to provide Internet access service across its entire Hilton Group hotels. In order to use the HSIA, hotel guest(s) must be authenticated through the proprietary CAS. The CAS performs both user authentication and accounting.

Credit Card Billing

Your VSG is integrated with online secure credit card billing service providers¹ to allow you to use a credit card service to authorize, process, and manage credit transactions directly through the Internet.

1. At the time of writing, the VSG allows online credit card billing through Authorize.net and SecurePay.

SSL Secure Login

With Secure Socket Layer (SSL) security activated upon login, data exchanged between the VSG and client computers is encrypted and protected.

PPPoE Support (RFC2516)

PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) emulates a dial-up connection. It allows your ISP to use their existing network configuration with newer broadband technologies such as ADSL. The PPPoE driver on the VSG is transparent to the computers on the LAN, which see only Ethernet and are not aware of PPPoE; thus saving you from having to manage PPPoE clients on individual computers.

PPTP Support

Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is a network protocol that enables secure transfer of data from a remote client to a private server, creating a Virtual Private Network (VPN) using a TCP/IP-based network. PPTP supports on-demand, multi-protocol and virtual private networking over public networks, such as the Internet. Subscribers can use PPTP to connect to a broadband modem to achieve access to high-speed data networks via a familiar "dialup networking" user interface.

4-Port Switch

A combination of switch and Internet gateway makes your VSG a cost-effective and viable network solution. You can connect up to four computers to the LAN ports on the VSG without the cost of a hub. To connect more than four Ethernet devices, attach a hub or switch.

Reset Button

Use the reset button to restore the VSG back to its factory defaults.

Plug-and-Play Internet Access

The VSG provides Internet access to attached computer(s) without extra software installation or computer configuration. In addition, with transparent proxy, the VSG resolves any incompatible proxy settings.

Port Forwarding

Use this feature to forward incoming service requests to a server on your local network.

DHCP Support

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) allows the individual computers (DHCP clients) to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a centralized DHCP server. The VSG has built-in DHCP server capability. It can assign IP addresses, an IP default gateway and DNS servers to DHCP clients. The VSG can also act as a surrogate DHCP server (DHCP Relay) where it relays IP address assignment from another DHCP server to the DHCP clients.

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) Client

The VSG allows you to maintain a central subscriber database on an external RADIUS server. Subscriber accounting and authentication is then done through the external RADIUS server. In addition, the VSG supports Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) that allows enforcement of upload/download bandwidth limits or specific advertisement web page per subscriber.

Built-in Authentication and Local Subscriber Database

The VSG allows you to maintain a subscriber database on the VSG without setting up an external RADIUS server. Subscriber accounting and authentication can be done using the local subscriber database.

Accounting

Accounting can be done using an external RADIUS server or the built-in accounting feature.

Local Content and Advertising Links

The VSG can redirect subscribers to a specified web site and display advertising links. This can be a source of extra online advertising revenues and increased business exposure.

Access Control (Walled Garden)

With the walled garden feature, subscribers are able to access predetermined web sites without logging in. The VSG blocks other Internet access until the subscribers log in.

E-mail Forwarding

The VSG is able to forward and retrieve e-mail messages when the subscriber's default e-mail server is down or behind a firewall.

DNS Proxy

With DNS proxy, the VSG provides DNS redirection when a subscriber's configured DNS server is behind a firewall or located in a private Intranet.

NAT (Network Address Translation)

NAT (RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet, for example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network to a different IP address known within another network.

The VSG automatically performs NAT on the LAN. You can also set the VSG to perform NAT on the WAN for VPN (IPSec and PPTP) connections.

MAC (Media Access Control) Filter

The MAC filter lets you block specific devices from accessing the Internet through the VSG.

Static Route

Static routes tell the VSG how to forward IP traffic when you configure the TCP/IP parameters manually and disable NAT.

Subscriber Login Page Customization

You can customize the subscriber login page according to your business needs. The advanced settings allow you to include welcome messages, a company logo and basic formatting.

Dual-function Console Port

The VSG provides a console port for local management. You can also set this console port to act as the printer port when connected to an external statement printer.

Web Configurator Management

The VSG comes with an embedded web-based configurator. It offers advanced management features and allows you to manage the VSG remotely using Internet Explorer (version 4.0 or above) or Netscape (version 6.0 or later).

System Maintenance

The firmware of the VSG can be upgraded via the web configurator or the SMT menu. The Embedded FTP server is for firmware upgrades as well as configuration file backups and restoration.

Ease of Installation

Your VSG is designed for quick, intuitive and easy installation. It can be mounted on a desktop or standard 19" rack.

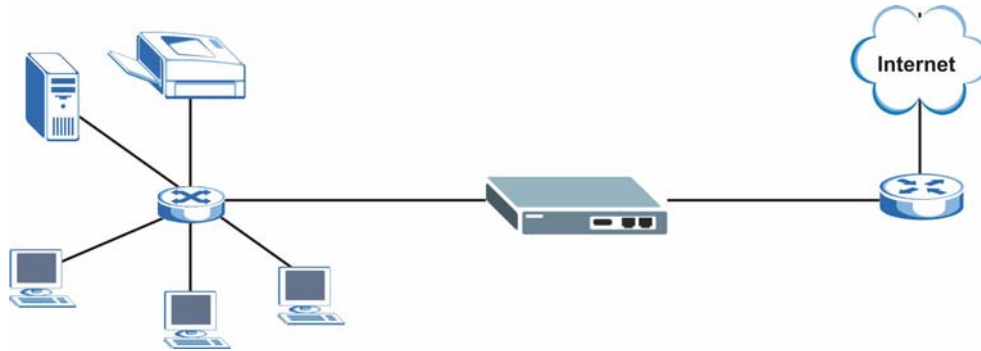
1.3 Applications

The following sections describe network application examples in which the VSG is used.

1.3.1 Internet Access for LAN Networks

With a broadband service account set up, the VSG allows the attached computers to enjoy high speed Internet access.

Figure 1 Application: Internet Access for LAN Networks

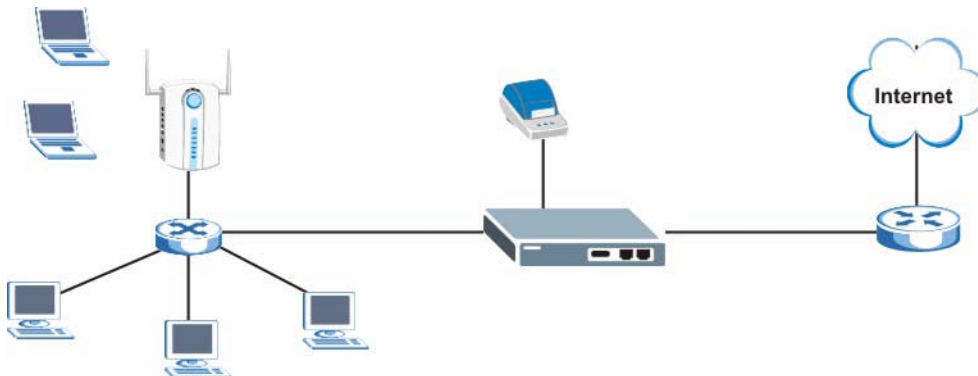


1.3.2 Internet Access in Public Areas

In public areas, such as a hotel, the VSG provides high speed Internet access to subscribers. Account billing and authentication can be done either using an external RADIUS server or the built-in billing function and local subscriber database.

Connect an access point (AP) to bridge the wired and the wireless network allowing wireless stations to access the Internet through the VSG.

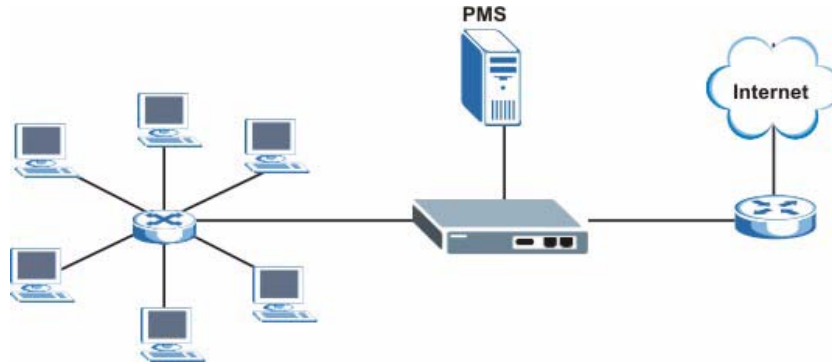
Figure 2 Application: Internet Access in Public Areas



1.3.3 Hotel Application with PMS

The following figure depicts an example where the VSG is used in a hotel to provide Internet service as one of their in-room services. Billing is done through an existing PMS in the hotel.

Figure 3 Application: Hotel



CHAPTER 2

Hardware Installation and Connection

This chapter shows you how to install the VSG and make hardware connections.

2.1 Installation Options

The following sections describe the different installation options.



Note: Do NOT block the ventilation holes and leave adequate space on the rear and sides of the VSG during hardware installation or when stacking.

2.1.1 Desktop Installation

- 1 Make sure the VSG is clean and dry. Set the VSG on a smooth space strong enough to support the weight of the VSG and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.
- 2 Make sure there is enough clearance around the VSG to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.
- 3 Attach the rubber feet to each corner on the bottom of the VSG. These rubber feet help protect the VSG from shock or vibration and ensure space between devices when stacking.

2.1.2 Rack Mount Installation

The VSG can be mounted on an EIA standard size, 19-inch rack or in a wiring closet with other equipment. Follow the steps below to mount your VSG on a standard EIA rack using the included rack-mounting kit.

- 1 Align one bracket with the holes on one side of the VSG and secure it with the bracket screws (smaller than the rack-mounting screws. Similarly, attach the other bracket.

Figure 4 Rack Mount: Attaching Brackets



- 2 After attaching both mounting brackets, position the VSG in the rack by lining up the holes in the brackets with the appropriate holes on the rack. Secure the VSG to the rack with rack-mounting screws.

Figure 5 Rack Mount: Securing to the Rack

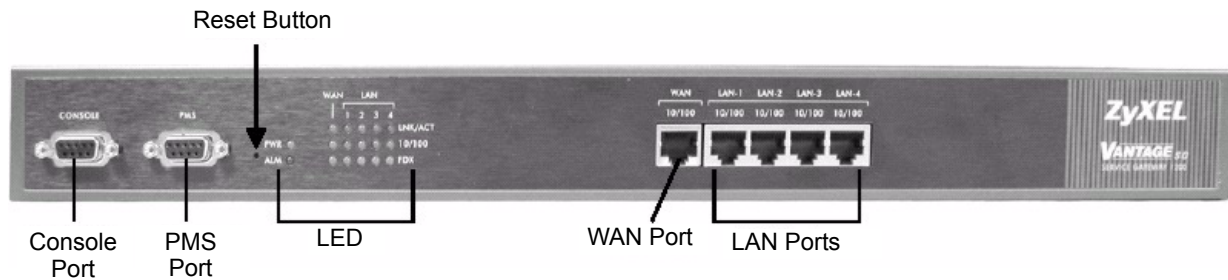


2.2 Hardware Connections

The following sections describe the hardware connections of the VSG.

2.2.1 Front Panel

The console, LAN and WAN ports, the reset button and the LEDs are located on the front panel.

Figure 6 Front Panel

2.2.1.1 Four LAN 10/100M Ports

Ethernet 10Base-T/100Base-T networks use Ethernet cables with RJ-45 connectors. The LAN ports are auto-crossover, so you may use a crossover Ethernet cable or a straight-through Ethernet cable to connect your VSG to a computer or external switch.

If you want to connect more than four Ethernet devices to your VSG, you must use an external switch or hub. Connect a LAN port on the VSG to a port on the switch using an Ethernet cable.

2.2.1.2 The WAN Port

Connect the VSG to a network with broadband Internet service. The WAN port is auto-crossover, so you may use a crossover Ethernet cable or a straight-through Ethernet cable to connect your VSG to a router.

2.2.1.3 The Console Port

You can perform local management of the VSG through the port labeled **CONSOLE**. It requires a direct connection between the VSG and a computer via a console cable. Refer to chapters on SMT configurations for more information.

You can also connect the **CONSOLE** port to a statement printer (the SP-200, sold separately) with a DB25 male to DB9 male adapter. A statement printer allows you to create and print out subscriber accounts automatically. In addition, you can also print the system status and the account and network reports. Set the function of the console port in the web configurator (see [Section 3.5 “General System Setting” on page 44](#)).

2.2.1.4 The PMS Port

Use a DB9 console cable to connect the **PMS** port to a PMS system.

2.2.1.5 The Reset Button

Use a pointed object to press this button in once to reset the VSG back to the factory defaults.



Note: All your custom configuration including the system usernames and passwords will be erased.

This will NOT delete the subscriber database or the port-location mappings.

2.2.2 Front Panel LEDs

The following table describes the LEDs on the front panel. When turned on, all LEDs are green unless otherwise specified.

Table 1 Front Panel LEDs

| LED | STATUS | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|------------------|--|
| PWR | On | The VSG is receiving power. |
| | Off | The VSG is not receiving power. |
| ALARM | On (Red) | There is a hardware failure. |
| | Blink Once (Red) | The system is starting up. |
| | Off | The system is functioning normally. |
| LAN or WAN | | |
| LK/ACT | On | The port is connected to an Ethernet device. |
| | Blinking | The port is receiving or sending data. |
| | Off | The port is not connected to an Ethernet device. |
| 10/100 | On | The port is operating at 100 Mbps. |
| | Off | The port is operating at 10 Mbps. |
| FDX | On | The port is operating in full-duplex mode. |
| | Off | The port is operating in half-duplex mode. |

2.2.3 Rear Panel

The power socket, the fan and a ventilation hole are located on the rear panel as shown next.



Note: Do NOT block the ventilation hole.

Figure 7 Rear Panel



2.2.4 Turning on the VSG

Connect the female end of the supplied power cord to the power socket on the back of the VSG and the male end to an appropriate power source.

When the power source is turned on, the **PWR** LED on the front panel turns on.

2.2.5 Methods of Restoring Factory Defaults

You can erase the current configuration and restore factory defaults in two ways:

- Use the **RESET** button on the front panel of the VSG (press this button once). Use this method for cases when the username, password and IP addresses of the VSG is not known.
- Use the web configurator to restore defaults (refer to [Section 26.8 “Reset the VSG to Factory Defaults” on page 204](#)).



Note: All custom settings will be lost once you reset to the default settings.

CHAPTER 3

The Web Configurator

This chapter introduces how to access the web configurator and perform general system configuration.

3.1 Introducing the Web Configurator

The web configurator is best viewed with Internet Explorer (version 4.0 or above) or Netscape (version 6. or later).



Note: JavaScript support must be enabled.

3.2 Accessing the Web Configurator

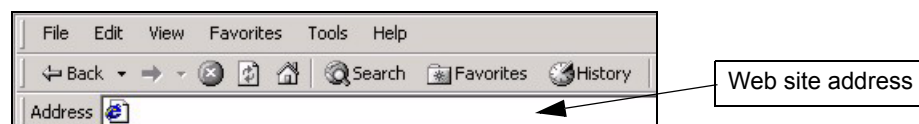
Follow the steps below to access the web configurator.



Note: The VSG allows only one web configurator session at a time.

- 1 Make sure your VSG is properly connected (refer to the instructions in [Chapter 2, “Hardware Installation and Connection,”](#) on page 35).
- 2 Launch your web browser and type the WAN or LAN IP address of the VSG as the web site address. **192.168.1.1** is the default IP address for the WAN port and **10.59.1.1** is the default IP address for the LAN port.
- 3 If you are using a different port number (between 8000 and 8099) for the web server, you must also append the port number to the WAN IP address separated with a colon “:”, for example, `http://192.168.1.1:8080`.

Figure 8 Entering IP Address in Internet Explorer



- 4 A login screen displays. Type “admin” (default) as the administrator user name and “1234” (default) as the password and click **Get Started**.



Note: The user name and password are case sensitive.

Figure 9 Web Configurator: Login

5 You should see the main screen as shown.

Figure 10 Web Configurator: Main Menu



Note: Please note that if there is no activity for longer than five minutes after you log in, the VSG will automatically log you out. If this happens, simply log back in again. You can change the timeout period in the web configurator (refer to [Section 4.8 "Server Configuration" on page 61](#)).

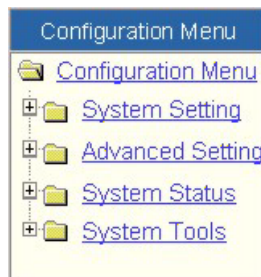
3.3 The Navigation Panels

The VSG web configurator provides two levels of navigation: the **Configuration Menu** panel and a screen-specific link panel.

3.3.1 The Configuration Menu Panel

The **Configuration Menu** panel on the left of all web pages provides a consistent way to access the configuration screens. Click each heading to expand the menu.

Figure 11 Navigation Panel



3.3.2 Screen Specific Link Panel

In some screens, a link panel displays on the top of the screen that allows you to navigate to advanced configuration screens. An example is shown in the figure below.





Figure 12 Navigation Panels: Screen specific Link Panel



3.4 Screen Overview

The following table lists the various web configurator screens.

Table 2 Web Configurator Screen Overview

| SYSTEM SETTING | ADVANCED SETTINGS | SYSTEM STATUS | SYSTEM TOOLS |
|---|---|--|---|
|  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System Setting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System WAN / LAN NAT Pool Server Authentication Billing Accounting Port-Location Mapping |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Advanced Setting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Credit Card Customization Bandwidth Portal Page Advertisement Walled Garden Passthrough LAN Devices Static Route Logs Session Trace SNMP MAC Filter |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System Status <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System Current User List DHCP Clients Session List NAT Pool Table LAN Devices Billing Log PMS Transaction Static Routing Table |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System Tools <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Configuration Firmware System Account SSL Certificate Restart Logout |

3.5 General System Setting

The **System** screen displays first when you access the web configurator.

The **Domain Name** entry is what is propagated to the DHCP clients on the LAN. If you leave this blank, the domain name obtained by a DHCP server is used. While you must enter the host name (System Name) on each individual computer, the domain name can be assigned from the VSG via DHCP.

Figure 13 System Setting: System

| System | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|-----------------------|---|-----------|---|-------------|---|---|---|-------------|---|-----------|---|
| System/Host Name | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Domain Name | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Date/Time | Date: <input type="text" value="2005"/> / <input type="text" value="9"/> / <input type="text" value="13"/> (Year/Month/Day) Time: <input type="text" value="16"/> : <input type="text" value="50"/> : <input type="text" value="52"/> (Hour : Minute : Second) <input type="button" value="Get from my Computer"/> <input type="button" value="Get from NTP server"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Use NTP (Network Time Protocol) Time Server <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Server IP/Domain Name</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Time Zone</td> <td><input type="text" value="GMT -12:00"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Update Time</td> <td><input type="text" value="0"/> hours</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Daylight Saving Time</td> <td> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Start Date:</td> <td><input type="text" value="4"/> Month / <input type="text" value="1"/> Day</td> </tr> <tr> <td>End Date:</td> <td><input type="text" value="10"/> Month / <input type="text" value="31"/> Day</td> </tr> </table> </td> </tr> </table> | Server IP/Domain Name | <input type="text"/> | Time Zone | <input type="text" value="GMT -12:00"/> | Update Time | <input type="text" value="0"/> hours | <input type="checkbox"/> Daylight Saving Time | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Start Date:</td> <td><input type="text" value="4"/> Month / <input type="text" value="1"/> Day</td> </tr> <tr> <td>End Date:</td> <td><input type="text" value="10"/> Month / <input type="text" value="31"/> Day</td> </tr> </table> | Start Date: | <input type="text" value="4"/> Month / <input type="text" value="1"/> Day | End Date: | <input type="text" value="10"/> Month / <input type="text" value="31"/> Day |
| Server IP/Domain Name | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Time Zone | <input type="text" value="GMT -12:00"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Update Time | <input type="text" value="0"/> hours | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Daylight Saving Time | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Start Date:</td> <td><input type="text" value="4"/> Month / <input type="text" value="1"/> Day</td> </tr> <tr> <td>End Date:</td> <td><input type="text" value="10"/> Month / <input type="text" value="31"/> Day</td> </tr> </table> | Start Date: | <input type="text" value="4"/> Month / <input type="text" value="1"/> Day | End Date: | <input type="text" value="10"/> Month / <input type="text" value="31"/> Day | | | | | | | | |
| Start Date: | <input type="text" value="4"/> Month / <input type="text" value="1"/> Day | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| End Date: | <input type="text" value="10"/> Month / <input type="text" value="31"/> Day | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NAT (Network Address Translation) | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> IP Plug and Play (IPnP Technology) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DNS Fake IP Reply <table border="1"> <tr> <td>User Session Limit:</td> <td><input type="radio"/> Unlimited</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td><input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="64"/> (1~1024)</td> </tr> </table> <input type="radio"/> Disable | User Session Limit: | <input type="radio"/> Unlimited | | <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="64"/> (1~1024) | | | | | | | | |
| User Session Limit: | <input type="radio"/> Unlimited | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="64"/> (1~1024) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Layer 2 Isolation Security | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Console Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Console Setting <input type="radio"/> Statement Printer | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Console Port Rate | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Bits per second</td> <td><input type="text" value="9600"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Data bits</td> <td><input type="text" value="8"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Parity</td> <td><input type="text" value="None"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Stop bits</td> <td><input type="text" value="1"/></td> </tr> </table> | Bits per second | <input type="text" value="9600"/> | Data bits | <input type="text" value="8"/> | Parity | <input type="text" value="None"/> | Stop bits | <input type="text" value="1"/> | | | | |
| Bits per second | <input type="text" value="9600"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Data bits | <input type="text" value="8"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Parity | <input type="text" value="None"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Stop bits | <input type="text" value="1"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Administrator Authorized Access IP Address | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Any <input type="radio"/> Specify <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td><input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td><input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td><input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td><input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td><input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/></td> </tr> </table> | 1 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | 2 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | 3 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | 4 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | 5 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | | |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> ~ <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Multicast Passthrough | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Allow remote user to ping the device | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SSL Certificate | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Custom Certificate | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 3 System Setting: System

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| System/ Host Name | Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 characters) for identification purposes. |
| Domain Name | Enter the domain name (if you know it) here. If you leave this field blank, the VSG may obtain a domain name from a DHCP server. The domain name entered by you is given priority over the DHCP server assigned domain name. |
| Date/Time | To manually set the system date and time, select the appropriate choices from the Date and Time drop-down list boxes. Click Get from my Computer to set the time and date on the VSG to be the same as the computer that you use to configure the VSG. If you select Use NTP (Network Time Protocol) Time Server option and set the necessary fields, you can click Get from NTP Server to update the time and date on the VSG from the NTP time server. |
| Use NTP (Network Time Protocol) Time Server | Select this option to have the VSG get the date and time information from a time server. |
| Server IP/ Domain Name | Enter the IP address or the domain name of the time server. Check with your ISP/ network administrator if you are unsure of this information. |
| Time Zone | Select your time zone from the drop-down list box. This will set the time difference between your time zone and Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). |
| Update Time | Enter the number of hours between updates. |
| Daylight Savings | Select this option if you use daylight savings time. Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening. |
| Start Date | Specify the month and day that your daylight-savings time starts on if you select Daylight Savings . |
| End Date | Specify the month and day that your daylight-savings time ends on if you select Daylight Savings . |
| NAT (Network Address Translation) | NAT (RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet, for example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network to a different IP address known within another network. Select Enable to activate Network Address Translation (NAT). Enable this feature to set your VSG to map multiple local IP addresses to one global IP address. This is the default selection. Select Disable to deactivate NAT. |
| IP Plug and Play (iPnP Technology) | Select this option to allow plug-and-play Internet access which means that subscribers do not have to change their network settings. This feature is activated by default. |
| DNS Fake IP Reply | Select this option to assign private IP address to a network device (such as the e-mail server). NAT will translate the private IP address to the public IP address on the WAN. |
| User Session Limit | You can set the VSG to limit the number of sessions each user can use at a time. Select Unlimited to allow each user to use any number of sessions at a time. Select the second option and enter the number of sessions (between 1 and 1024) each user is allowed to use at a time. |

Table 3 System Setting: System (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Layer 2 Isolation Security | If you activate NAT, select Enable in this field to prevent communication between subscribers. This is the default selection. Select Disable to deactivate layer 2 security and allow communication between subscribers. |
| Console Type | Use this field to set the function of the Console port on the front panel of the VSG. Select Console Setting when you connect the console port directly to a computer for local management. This is the default setting. Select Statement Printer when you connect the console port to an SP-200. |
| Console Port Rate | Select the fields below to configure the Console port. Note: If you change the console port settings, make sure you also make the same change to the terminal emulator software. |
| Bits per second | This field only applies when you select Console Setting in the Console Type field. Select a console port speed from the drop-down list box. Choices are 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 14400, 19200, 38400, 57600 and 115200 . The default selection is 9600 . |
| Data bits | Select a data bit from the drop-down list box. |
| Parity | Select the parity from the drop-down list box. |
| Stop bits | Select the stop bit from the drop-down list box. |
| Administrator Authorized Access IP Address | Select Any to use any computer to access the web configurator on the VSG. Select Specify and then enter the IP address(es) or a range of IP addresses of the computer(s) that is allowed to log in to configure the VSG. |
| Multicast Pass Through | Select Enable to allow multicast traffic to pass through the VSG. This may affect your network performance. Select Disable to prevent any multicast traffic from passing through the VSG. This is the default setting. |
| Allow remote user to ping the device | Select Enable to respond to Ping requests from the LAN or WAN interface. Select Disable to not respond to Ping requests from the LAN or WAN interface. |
| SSL Certificate | Certificate Secure Socket Layer (SSL) security allows you to create a secure connection between the VSG and the client computer(s). Select Default to use the default system-generated SSL certificate. Select Custom Certificate to use a certificate obtained from a certificate authority. Refer to Chapter 25, "Secure Socket Layer," on page 189 for more information. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

3.6 System Login Accounts

There are four system accounts that you can use to log in to the VSG: administrator, account manager, supervisor and super subscriber.

- The administrator account allows you full access to all system configurations. The default administrator user name is “admin” and password “1234”.

- The account manager account is used for subscriber account management only. No system configuration is allowed. This account is useful for front desk personnel (such as in a hotel) for setting up subscriber accounts without tampering with the system configuration. The default user name and password are “account”.
- With the supervisor account, you can view the system status and change the supervisor account password. You can also edit the **Advanced Setting Portal Page**, **Advertisement** and **Walled Garden** screens. The default user name and password are “supervisor”.
- The super subscriber account is used for testing the Internet connection between the VSG and the ISP. There is no time limitation or billing imposed on this account. Thus anyone who logs in with this account is able to gain Internet access for free. The default super subscriber user name and password are “super”.

3.7 Changing System Login Passwords



Note: It is recommended you change the system passwords.

From the **Main Menu** screen, click **System Tools** and **System Account**.

Figure 14 System Tools: System Account

| Administrator Account | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Username: | <input type="text" value="admin"/> |
| Password: | <input type="password" value="admin"/> |
| Confirm: | <input type="password"/> |
| Accounting Manager | |
| Username: | <input type="text" value="account"/> |
| Password: | <input type="password" value="account"/> |
| Confirm: | <input type="password"/> |
| Supervisor Account | |
| Username: | <input type="text" value="supervisor"/> |
| Password: | <input type="password" value="supervisor"/> |
| Confirm: | <input type="password"/> |
| Super Subscriber Account | |
| Username: | <input type="text" value="super"/> |
| Password: | <input type="password" value="super"/> |
| Confirm: | <input type="password"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 4 System Tools: System Account

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| Administrator Account | This account permits full access to all system configurations. |
| Username | Enter the user name for the administrative account. The default is admin . |
| Password | Enter a new administrative account password. |
| Confirm | Enter the new administrator password again for confirmation. |
| Accounting Manager | This account allows you to set up subscriber accounts. No system configuration is allowed. |
| Username | Enter the user name for the account manager account. The default is account . |
| Password | Enter a new account manager password. |
| Confirm | Enter the new account manager password again for confirmation. |
| Supervisor Account | This account allows you to view system status only. |
| Username | Enter the user name for the supervisor account. The default is supervisor . |
| Password | Enter a new supervisor password. |
| Confirm | Enter the new supervisor password again for confirmation. |
| Super Subscriber Account | You can use this account to test Internet connection between a computer behind the VSG to the ISP. No time limit or billing is imposed on this account. |
| Username | Enter the user name for the super subscriber account. The default is super . |
| Password | Enter a new super subscriber account password. |
| Confirm | Enter the new super subscriber account password again for confirmation. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes back to the VSG. |

3.8 Resetting the VSG



Note: All your custom configuration will be erased once you reset the VSG. You may choose to keep the subscriber account information and the port-location mapping settings.

Follow the steps below to reset the VSG back to the factory default settings.


- 1 Click **System Tools, Configuration** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 15 System Tools: Reset

| Configuration | |
|---|---|
| This feature can import your saved settings to this device or export the stored settings from this device to your PC. | |
| Backup | |
| Click Backup to save the current system configuration to your computer. | |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Restore | |
| To restore your stored system configuration to this device | |
| File Path: <input type="text"/> Browse... | Apply |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Reset the system back to factory defaults | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep subscriber profile | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep port-location mapping profile Apply | |

- 2 Scroll down to the **Reset the system back to factory defaults** section at the bottom of the screen.
- 3 If you want to keep all subscriber account information, select **Keep subscriber profile** and/or **Keep port-location mapping profile**.
- 4 Click **Apply**.
- 5 Wait for the VSG to finish restarting before accessing the VSG again.

3.8 Restarting the VSG

 **Note:** You *must* restart the VSG every time you change the system IP address or upload a firmware or configuration file.

In the **Main Menu** screen, click **System Tools, Restart** and click **Apply**.

Figure 16 System Tools: Restart

| Restart |
|--|
| To Restart the system, click Apply |
| Apply |

3.9 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

In the **Main Menu** screen, click **System Tools, Logout** and click **Apply** to exit from the web configurator.

Figure 17 System Tools: Logging Out



CHAPTER 4

LAN, WAN and Server Setup

This chapter shows you how to configure LAN and WAN ports and server settings.

4.1 Factory Ethernet Defaults

The Ethernet parameters of the VSG are preset to the following values:

- 1 WAN IP address of 192.168.1.1 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.
- 2 LAN IP address of 10.59.1.1.
- 3 DHCP server enabled on the LAN with a 252 client IP address pool starting from 10.59.1.2

These parameters should work for the majority of installations. If you wish to change the factory defaults or to learn more about TCP/IP, please read on.

4.2 LANs and WANs

A LAN (Local Area Network) is a computer network limited to the immediate area, usually the same building or floor of a building. A WAN (Wide Area Network), on the other hand, is an outside connection to another network or the Internet.

4.3 IP Address Assignment

A static IP is a fixed IP that you configure on the VSG. A dynamic IP is not fixed; the DHCP server provides an IP address to the VSG each time it connects to the network. When an Ethernet device is configured to obtain a dynamic IP address from a DHCP server, it is known as a DHCP client.

4.4 DHCP Configuration

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) allows the individual clients (Ethernet device) to obtain the TCP/IP configuration from a centralized DHCP server. The VSG has built-in DHCP server capability, which means it can assign IP addresses, an IP default gateway and DNS servers to computer systems that support the DHCP client when this feature is activated. The VSG can also act as a surrogate DHCP server where it relays IP address assignment from the actual DHCP server to the clients.

4.4.1 IP Address and Subnet Mask

Like houses on a street that share a common street name, the computers on a LAN share one common network number.

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved a block of addresses specifically for private use (refer to [Section 4.4.2 “Private IP Addresses” on page 54](#)); please do *not* use any other number unless you are told otherwise. Let's say you select 192.168.1.0 as the network number; which covers 254 individual addresses, from 192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.254 (zero and 255 are reserved). In other words, the first three numbers specify the network number while the last number identifies an individual computer on that network.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address.

4.4.2 Private IP Addresses

Every machine on the Internet must have a unique address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet, for example, only between your two branch offices, you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems.

However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks:

10.0.0.0 – 10.255.255.255
172.16.0.0 – 172.31.255.255
192.168.0.0 – 192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP or it can be assigned from a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above.



Note: For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, *Address Allocation for Private Internets* and RFC 1466, *Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space*.

4.5 DNS Server Address

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa, for example, the IP address of *www.zyxel.com* is 204.217.0.2. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a machine before you can access it. The DNS server addresses that you enter in the DHCP setup are passed to the client machines along with the assigned IP address and subnet mask.

There are two ways that an ISP disseminates the DNS server addresses. The first is for an ISP to tell a customer the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when s/he signs up. The second is to obtain the DNS server information automatically when a computer is set as a DHCP client.

4.6 LAN Configuration

To configure the LAN settings on the VSG, click **System Setting** and **WAN/LAN** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 18 System Setting: WAN/LAN: LAN Configuration

| WAN/LAN | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| LAN | IP Address: <input type="text" value="10.59.1.1"/> Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.0.0.0"/> |
| WAN MAC Address | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Change to: <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| WAN Port Mode | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Get automatically from a DHCP server MTU Setting: <input type="text" value="1500"/> (576-1500) <input type="radio"/> Use fixed IP address <input type="radio"/> PPPoE <input type="radio"/> PPTP |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the LAN-related fields in this screen.

Table 5 System Setting: WAN/LAN: LAN Configuration

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| LAN | |
| IP Address | Enter the LAN IP address of the VSG in dotted decimal notation. The default is 10.59.1.1 . |
| Subnet Mask | Enter the LAN subnet mask in dotted decimal notation. The default is 255.0.0.0 . |



Note: You must restart the VSG if you change the IP address.

If you set the VSG as a DHCP server on the LAN, the VSG will automatically change the LAN DHCP settings based on the new LAN IP address.

4.7 WAN Configuration

To configure the WAN settings on the VSG, click **System Setting** and **WAN/LAN**. The **WAN/LAN** screen varies depending on the settings in the **WAN Port Mode** field.

4.7.1 Configuring WAN MAC Address

Use the **WAN/LAN** screen to configure the MAC address of the WAN port by either setting the VSG to use the factory default or specify the MAC address of a computer on the LAN.

Figure 19 System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN MAC Address

| WAN/LAN | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| LAN | IP Address: <input type="text" value="10.59.1.1"/> Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.0.0.0"/> |
| WAN MAC Address | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Change to: <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| WAN Port Mode | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Get automatically from a DHCP server MTU Setting: <input type="text" value="1500"/> (576~1500) <input type="radio"/> Use fixed IP address <input type="radio"/> PPPoE <input type="radio"/> PPTP |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the related field in this screen.

Table 6 System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN MAC Address

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|---|
| WAN MAC Address | Select Default to use the factory assigned MAC address. If your ISP requires MAC address authentication, select Change to and enter the MAC address of a computer on the LAN in the fields provided. |

4.7.2 MTU

A maximum transmission unit (MTU) is the largest size packet or frame, specified in octets (eight-bit bytes) that can be sent in a packet- or frame-based network. The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) uses the MTU to determine the maximum size of each packet in any transmission. Too large an MTU size may mean retransmissions if the packet encounters a router that can't handle that large a packet. Too small an MTU size means relatively more header overhead and more acknowledgements that have to be sent and handled.

4.7.3 WAN IP Address Settings

Use the **WAN/LAN** screen to change the WAN IP address settings.

Figure 20 System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN IP

The screenshot shows the WAN/LAN configuration interface. It is divided into several sections:

- LAN:** IP Address: 10.59.1.1, Subnet Mask: 255.0.0.0
- WAN MAC Address:**
 - Default
 - Change to: 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00 : 00
 - Get automatically from a DHCP server
- WAN Port Mode:** (highlighted with a red box)
 - Use fixed IP address
 - IP Address: 192.168.1.1
 - Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
 - Default IP Gateway: 192.168.1.254
 - Primary DNS Server: 168.95.1.1
 - Secondary DNS Server: (empty)
 - MTU Setting: 1500 (576~1500)
 - PPPoE
 - PPTP

An **Apply** button is located at the bottom right of the screen.

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 7 System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN IP

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| WAN Port Mode | |
| Get automatically from a DHCP server | Select this option to set the VSG to act as a DHCP client on the WAN. The VSG obtains TCP/IP information (IP address, DNS server information, etc.) from a DHCP server. |
| MTU Setting | Enter the MTU (Maximum Transfer Unit) size. |

Table 7 System Setting: WAN/LAN: WAN IP (continued)

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|--|
| Use fixed IP address | Select this option to set the VSG to use a static (or fixed) IP address. This is the default setting. |
| IP Address | Enter the static IP address in dotted decimal notation. The default WAN IP address is 192.168.1.1 . |
| Subnet Mask | Enter the subnet mask in dotted decimal notation. |
| Default IP Gateway | Enter the IP address of the default gateway device. |
| Primary/Secondary DNS Server | Enter the IP addresses of the primary and/or secondary DNS servers. |
| MTU Setting | Enter the MTU (Maximum Transfer Unit) size. |

4.7.4 PPPoE

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) functions as a dial-up connection. PPPoE is an IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) draft standard specifying how a host personal computer interacts with a broadband modem (for example DSL, cable, wireless, etc.) to achieve access to high-speed data networks. It preserves the existing Microsoft Dial-Up Networking experience and requires no new learning or procedures.

For the service provider, PPPoE offers an access and authentication method that works with existing access control systems (for instance, RADIUS). For the user, PPPoE provides a login and authentication method that the existing Microsoft Dial-Up Networking software can activate, and therefore requires no new learning or procedures for Windows users.

One of the benefits of PPPoE is the ability to let end users access one of multiple network services, a function known as dynamic service selection. This enables the service provider to easily create and offer new IP services for specific users.

Operationally, PPPoE saves significant effort for both the subscriber and the ISP/carrier, as it requires no specific configuration of the broadband modem at the subscriber's site.

By implementing PPPoE directly on the VSG (rather than individual computers), the computers on the LAN do not need PPPoE software installed, since the VSG does that part of the task. Furthermore, with NAT, all of the LAN's computers will have Internet access.

Figure 21 System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPPoE

| WAN/LAN | |
|---|--|
| LAN | IP Address: <input type="text" value="10.59.1.1"/> Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.0.0.0"/> |
| WAN MAC Address | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Change to: <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| WAN Port Mode | <input type="radio"/> Get automatically from a DHCP server <input type="radio"/> Use fixed IP address |
| | <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPPoE |
| | Username: <input type="text"/> |
| | Password: <input type="text"/> |
| | PPP MTU Setting: <input type="text" value="1492"/> (option) |
| | TCP MSS Setting: <input type="text" value="1452"/> (option) |
| | Service Name: <input type="text"/> (option) |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Connect on Demand | Max Idle Time: <input type="text" value="10"/> Min. |
| <input type="radio"/> Keep alive | Redial Period: <input type="text" value="30"/> Sec. |
| | <input type="radio"/> PPTP |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the related fields in this screen.

Table 8 System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPPoE

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|---|
| WAN Port Mode | PPPoE Select this option to activate PPPoE support. |
| Username | Enter the user name exactly as your ISP assigned. If assigned a name in the form user@domain where domain identifies a service name, then enter both components exactly as given. |
| Password | Enter the password associated with the user name above. |
| PPP MTU Setting | Enter the size of a Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). |
| TCP MSS Setting | Enter the size of the Maximum Segment Size (MSS). |
| Service Name | Enter the name of your PPPoE service. |
| Connect on Demand | Select this option when you don't want the connection up all the time and specify an idle timeout in the Max Idle Time field (maximum 65535 minutes). This is the default setting with an idle timeout of 10 minutes. |
| Keep Alive | Select this option when you want the Internet connection up all the time and specify a redial period in the Redial Period field (maximum 65535 seconds). When disconnected, the VSG will attempt to bring up the connection after the redial period. |

4.7.5 PPTP

Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) is a network protocol that enables transfers of data from a remote client to a private server, creating a Virtual Private Network (VPN) using TCP/IP-based networks.

PPTP supports on-demand, multi-protocol, and virtual private networking over public networks, such as the Internet.

Figure 22 System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPTP

| WAN/LAN | |
|------------------------|--|
| LAN | IP Address: <input type="text" value="10.59.1.1"/> Subnet Mask: <input type="text" value="255.0.0.0"/> |
| WAN MAC Address | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Change to: <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> : <input type="text" value="00"/> |
| WAN Port Mode | <input type="radio"/> Get automatically from a DHCP server <input type="radio"/> Use fixed IP address <input type="radio"/> PPPoE <input checked="" type="radio"/> PPTP |
| | PPTP Local IP Address: <input type="text"/> |
| | PPTP Local Subnet Mask: <input type="text"/> |
| | PPTP Local Default Gateway: <input type="text"/> |
| | PPTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> |
| | Username: <input type="text"/> |
| | Password: <input type="text"/> |
| | PPP MTU Setting: <input type="text" value="1460"/> (option) |
| | TCP MSS Setting: <input type="text" value="1400"/> (option) |
| | Connection ID/Name: <input type="text"/> (option) |
| | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Connect on Demand Max Idle Time: <input type="text" value="10"/> Min. |
| | <input type="radio"/> Keep alive Redial Period: <input type="text" value="30"/> Sec. |
| | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

The following table describes the related fields in this screen.

Table 9 System Setting: WAN/LAN: PPTP

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|---|
| WAN Port Mode | |
| PPTP | Select this option to activate PPTP support. Refer to Section 4.7.5 "PPTP" on page 60 for more information. |
| PPTP Local IP Address | Enter the IP address assigned to you. |
| PPTP Local Subnet Mask | Enter the subnet mask assigned to you. |
| PPTP Local Default Gateway | Enter the IP address of the gateway device. |
| Username | Enter the user name exactly as your ISP assigned. If assigned a name in the form user@domain where domain identifies a service name, then enter both components exactly as given. |
| Password | Enter the password associated with the user name above. |
| PPP MTU Setting | Enter the size of a Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). |
| TCP MSS Setting | Enter the size of the Maximum Segment Size (MSS). |
| Connections ID/Name | Enter your identification name of the PPTP server assigned to you by the ISP. |
| Connect on Demand | Select this option when you don't want the connection up all the time and specify an idle timeout in the Max Idle Time field (maximum 65535 minutes). This is the default setting with an idle timeout of 10 minutes. |
| Keep Alive | Select this option when you want the Internet connection up all the time and specify a redial period in the Redial Period field (maximum 65535 seconds). When disconnected, the VSG will attempt to bring up the connection after the redial period. |

4.8 Server Configuration

Use the **Server Configuration** screen to set the embedded web server, the LAN DHCP server and specify the e-mail server for e-mail redirection on the VSG.

Click **System Setting** and **Server** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 23 System Setting: Server

| Server | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Web Server | Server Port: <input type="text" value="80"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SSL Security Administrator Idle-Timeout: <input type="text" value="100"/> Min(s) (1 - 1440) |
| DHCP Server | <input type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> DHCP Relay <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> DHCP Server IP Address <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/> </div> <input checked="" type="radio"/> DHCP Server(Private) <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> IP Pool Starting Address <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="10.59.1.2"/> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Pool Size: <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="253"/> (Max.=1024) </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Lease Time (Private) <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="1440"/> (Minutes) </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Primary DNS Server <input style="width: 100%;" type="text" value="168.95.1.1"/> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"> Secondary DNS Server <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/> </div> |
| Email Server Redirect | IP Address or Domain Name <input style="width: 100%;" type="text"/> SMTP Port <input style="width: 50px;" type="text" value="25"/> (25, 2500 - 2599) |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 10 System Setting: Server

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|--|
| Web Server | |
| Server Port | Specify the port number of the embedded web server on the VSG for accessing the web configurator. The default port number is 80 . Enter a number between 8010 and 8060 to access the web configurator behind a NAT-enabled network. If you enter a number between 8010 and 8060, you need to append the port number to the WAN or LAN port IP address to access the web configurator. For example, if you enter "8010" as the web server port number, then you must enter "http://www.192.168.1.1:8010" where 192.168.1.1 is the WAN or LAN port IP address. |
| SSL | Security Secure Socket Layer (SSL) security allows you to create a secure connection between the VSG and the client computer(s). Refer to Chapter 25, "Secure Socket Layer," on page 189 for more information. Select this option to activate SSL security. By default, SSL login security is disabled. |
| Administrator Idle-Timeout | Specify how many minutes (between 1 and 1440) the web configuration can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your username and password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks. Note: This does NOT apply to the SMT management session. |

Table 10 System Setting: Server (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| DHCP Server | Select the DHCP mode on the LAN. |
| Disable | Select this option to disable DHCP server on the LAN. |
| DHCP Relay | Select this option to set the VSG to forward client DHCP requests to a DHCP server on the LAN network. Then configure the DHCP Server IP Address field. |
| DHCP Server IP Address | If you select DHCP Relay , enter the IP address of the real DHCP server. |
| DHCP Server | Select this option to set the VSG to assign network information (IP address, DNS information etc.) to Ethernet device(s) connected to the LAN port(s). This is the default setting. |
| DHCP Pool Start IP Address | Enter the first of the continuous addresses in the IP address pool. The default is 10.59.1.2 (based on the default LAN IP address of 10.59.1.1). |
| DHCP Pool Size | This field specifies the size or count of the IP address pool. Enter a number not greater than 1024. The default is 253 . |
| Lease Time | Specify the time (in minutes between 1 and 71582788) a DHCP client is allowed to use an assigned IP address. When the lease time expires, the DHCP client is given a new, unused IP address. |
| Primary/Secondary DNS IP Address | Enter the IP address of the DNS server(s) in the Primary DNS IP Address and/or Secondary DNS IP Address fields. Note: You <i>must</i> specify a DNS server. |
| E-mail Server Redirect | You can set the VSG to redirect and send subscriber's E-mail via a specified e-mail server. This feature allows subscribers to send E-mail via the local E-mail server when their default e-mail server is not working or prevented by relay restrictions. |
| IP Address or Domain Name | Specify the IP address or the domain name of the e-mail server to which the VSG forwards e-mail. |
| SMTP Port | Specify the port number (25 is the default) for SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol). Enter a number between 2500 and 2599. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the settings. |

CHAPTER 5

NAT Pool

This chapter shows how to configure Network Address Translation (NAT) on the WAN for VPN packets.

5.1 NAT Introduction

NAT (Network Address Translation - NAT, RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet, for example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network to a different IP address known within another network.

5.1.1 NAT Definitions

Inside/outside denotes where a host is located relative to the VSG, for example, the computers of your subscribers are the inside hosts, while the web servers on the Internet are the outside hosts.

Global/local denotes the IP address of a host in a packet as the packet traverses a router, for example, the local address refers to the IP address of a host when the packet is in the local network, while the global address refers to the IP address of the host when the same packet is traveling in the WAN side.

Note that inside/outside refers to the location of a host, while global/local refers to the IP address of a host used in a packet. Thus, an inside local address (ILA) is the IP address of an inside host in a packet when the packet is still in the local network, while an inside global address (IGA) is the IP address of the same inside host when the packet is on the WAN side. The following table summarizes this information.

Table 11 NAT Definitions

| ITEM | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|---|
| Inside | This refers to the host on the LAN. |
| Outside | This refers to the host on the WAN. |
| Local | This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the LAN. |
| Global | This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the WAN. |

NAT never changes the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host.

5.1.2 What NAT Does

In the simplest form, NAT changes the source IP address in a packet received from a subscriber (the inside local address) to another (the inside global address) before forwarding the packet to the WAN side. When the response comes back, NAT translates the destination address (the inside global address) back to the inside local address before forwarding it to the original inside host. Note that the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host is never changed.

The global IP addresses for the inside hosts can be either static or dynamically assigned by the ISP. In addition, you can designate servers, for example, a web server and a telnet server, on your local network and make them accessible to the outside world. If you do not define any servers, NAT offers the additional benefit of firewall protection. With no servers defined, your VSG filters out all incoming inquiries, thus preventing intruders from probing your network. For more information on IP address translation, refer to *RFC 1631, The IP Network Address Translator (NAT)*.

5.1.3 How NAT Works

Each packet has two addresses – a source address and a destination address. For outgoing packets, the ILA (Inside Local Address) is the source address on the LAN, and the IGA (Inside Global Address) is the source address on the WAN. For incoming packets, the ILA is the destination address on the LAN, and the IGA is the destination address on the WAN. NAT maps private (local) IP addresses to globally unique ones required for communication with hosts on other networks. It replaces the original IP source address in each packet and then forwards it to the Internet. The VSG keeps track of the original addresses and port numbers so incoming reply packets can have their original values restored.

5.2 VPN and NAT

A VPN (Virtual Private Network) provides secure communications between sites without the expense of leased site-to-site lines. A secure VPN is a combination of tunneling, encryption, authentication, access control and auditing technologies/services used to transport traffic over the Internet or any insecure network that uses the TCP/IP protocol suite for communication.

The VSG allows subscribers to create a VPN tunnel to a remote site.



Note: For IPSec, the VSG does not support AH protocol.

By default, the VSG performs NAT on the LAN; mapping multiple private LAN addresses to a single public address on the WAN. This prevents subscribers from creating multiple VPN connections to a remote VPN device that allows only one VPN connection per source IP address.

In order to allow subscribers to establish multiple VPN connections to a remote VPN device with single-connection-per-source limitation, set the VSG to perform NAT on the WAN. You need to configure the NAT address pool for use with VPN connections on the WAN port. The VSG automatically maps one/more private IP addresses to one/more public IP addresses for VPN packets. The following table describes the NAT mapping types on the WAN for VPN packets.

Table 12 WAN NAT Mapping Types for VPN

| TYPE | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| One-to-One | For VPN connections to the same remote VPN device, the VSG maps each private LAN IP address to one public WAN IP address. |
| One-to-Many | For VPN connections to different remote VPN devices, the VSG maps multiple private LAN IP address to one public WAN IP address. |

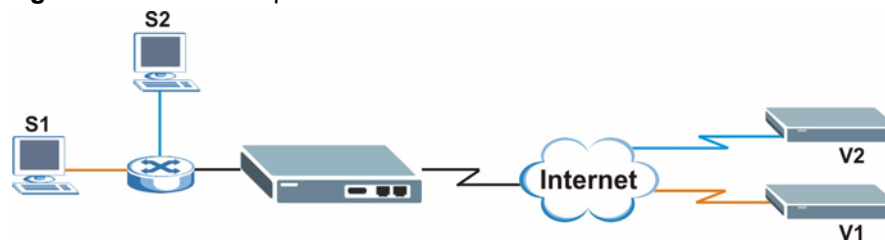
5.3 NAT Examples

The following sections describe some NAT address mapping examples for VPN connections.

5.3.1 Example 1: One-to-One

The figure below shows an example where the two subscribers **S1** and **S2** tries to establish secure VPN connections to the same VPN server **V1** at the same time. For example, the VSG is using a public IP address of 211.21.21.1². In this case, the VSG performs One-to-One IP address translation on the WAN.

Figure 24 NAT Example: One-to-One



The following table shows the address mapping.

Table 13 NAT Example: One-to-One

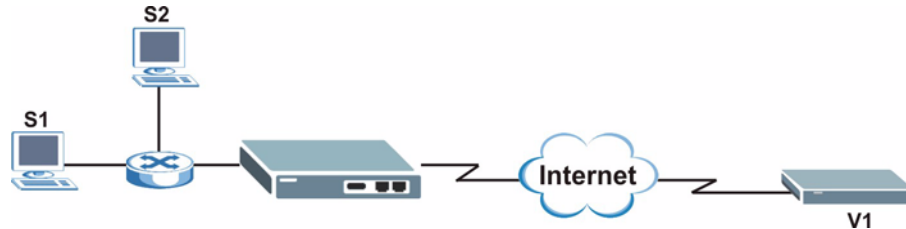
| SUBSCRIBER | ORIGINAL SOURCE IP | TRANSLATED SOURCE IP |
|------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| S1 | 10.59.1.2 | 211.21.21.2 |
| S2 | 10.59.1.3 | 221.21.21.3 |

2. All public IP address discussed are for examples only.

5.3.2 Example 2: Many-to-One

The figure below shows an example where the two subscribers **S1** and **S2** try to establish a secure VPN connection to VPN servers **V1** and **V2** respectively at the same time. In this case, the VSG performs Many-to-One IP address translation on the WAN since the destination address is different.

Figure 25 NAT Example: Many-to-One



The following table shows the address mapping.

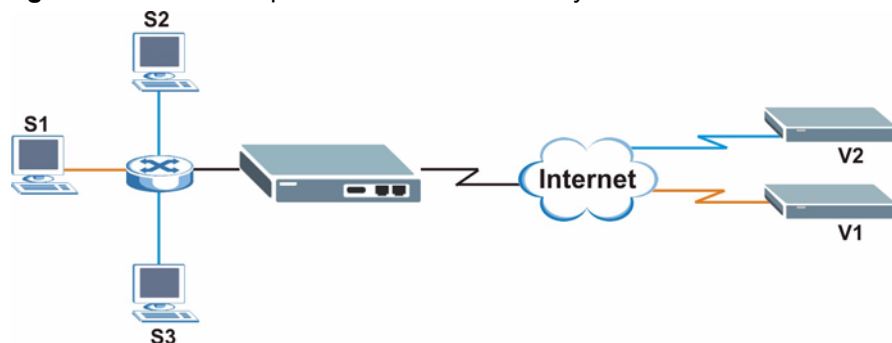
Table 14 NAT Example: Many-to-One

| SUBSCRIBER | ORIGINAL SOURCE IP | TRANSLATED SOURCE IP |
|------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| S1 | 10.59.1.2 | 211.21.21.2 |
| S2 | 10.59.1.3 | 211.21.21.2 |

5.3.3 Example 3: One-to-One and Many-to-One

The figure below shows an example where subscriber **S1** tries to connect to VPN server **V1** while subscriber **S2** and **S3** try to connect to the same VPN server **V2** at the same time. In this case, subscribers **S1** and **S2** map to the same WAN IP address since the destination is different while subscriber **S3** maps to a different WAN IP address.

Figure 26 NAT Example: One-to-One and Many-to-One



The following table shows the address mapping.

Table 15 NAT Example: One-to-One and Many-to-One

| SUBSCRIBER | ORIGINAL SOURCE IP | TRANSLATED SOURCE IP |
|------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| S1 | 10.59.1.2 | 211.21.21.2 |
| S2 | 10.59.1.3 | 211.21.21.2 |
| S3 | 10.59.1.4 | 211.21.21.3 |

5.4 Configuring NAT Pool



Note: You only need to set the NAT address pool if the remote VPN server(s) allows only one connection per source IP address.



Note: You need to acquire additional public IP address(es) from your ISP to create NAT pool(s).

To set the NAT address pool, click **System Setting** and **NAT Pool** in the navigation panel. A screen displays as shown next.

Figure 27 System Setting: NAT Pool

The screenshot shows the NAT Pool configuration interface. At the top, the title is "NAT Pool". Below the title, there are two radio buttons: "Disable" (which is selected) and "Enable". Underneath, there are two input fields: "Start IP:" and "End IP:", followed by the text "(Max. 50 IPs)" and a blue "Add to List" button. Below this is a table with three columns: "No.", "Address List", and "Delete". The table currently contains one row with a yellow background. The "Delete" button in the table is red. At the bottom right of the screen, there is a yellow "Apply" button.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 16 System Setting: NAT Pool

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|--|
| Disable | Select this option to deactivate this feature. Subscribers are not be able to establish multiple connections simultaneously to the same VPN server (that has the single-connection-per-source limitation). |
| Enable | Select this option to perform address translation on the WAN to allow subscribers to establish simultaneous connections to the same VPN server (that has the single-connection-per-source limitation). You must then configure the address pool for VPN connections. |
| Start/End IP | Specify the beginning and ending IP addresses of the address pool in the fields provided and click Add to List . The following shows NAT pool examples if the VSG is using a WAN public IP address of 211.21.21.1: Group 1: 211.21.21.2 ~ 211.21.21.6 (five IP addresses) Group 2: 211.21.21.20 ~ 211.21.21.29 (ten IP addresses) Group 3: 211.21.21.60 ~ 211.21.21.69 (ten IP addresses) Group 4: 211.21.21.75 ~ 211.21.21.76 (two IP addresses) Note: You can configure up to ten address pools (each pool can contain up to 50 addresses) on the VSG. |
| No. | This read-only field displays the index number. |
| Address List | This read-only field displays the address pool. |
| Delete | Click Delete to remove the selected entry(ies). |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

CHAPTER 6

Authentication

This chapter shows you how to set up subscriber authentication on the VSG.

6.1 Authentication Overview

You can set the VSG to authenticate subscribers in a number of ways:

- User agreement
- CAS (Central Authentication Service)
- Built-in authentication
- Remote RADIUS server

By default, subscriber authentication is disabled. This allows all subscribers to access the Internet without entering account username and password.

6.1.1 User Agreement

In cases where authentication is not required and anyone can access the Internet through the VSG, you can set the VSG to require users to accept a service usage agreement before they can access the Internet.

6.1.2 CAS (Central Authentication Service)

The Hilton Group Corporation developed the High Speed Internet Access (HSIA) service to provide Internet access service across its entire Hilton Group hotels.

In order to use the HSIA, hotel guest(s) must be authenticated through the proprietary CAS. The CAS performs both user authentication and accounting.

Figure 28 CAS Example



The following summarizes the communication steps before Internet access is allowed.

- 1 A hotel guest launches a web browser.
- 2 The VSG redirects the guest's web browser to a login screen at CAS.

- 3 The guest enters the provided access information.
- 4 Once authentication is successful, CAS informs VSG to allow Internet access to the guest.

6.1.3 Accounting Methods

The VSG provides two accounting methods: **Accumulation** and **Time to Finish**.

- The **Accumulation** accounting method allows multiple re-logins until the allocated time period or until the subscriber account is expired. The VSG accounts for the time the subscriber logs in for Internet access.
- The **Time to Finish** accounting method is good for one-time logins. Once a subscriber logs in, the VSG stores the MAC address of the subscriber's computer for the duration of the time allocated. Thus the subscriber does not have to enter the user name and password again for re-login within the allocated time. Once activated, the subscriber account is valid until the allocated time is reached even if the subscriber disconnects Internet access for a certain period within the allocated time. For example, if Joe purchases a one-hour time-to-finish account. He starts using the Internet for the first 20 minutes and then disconnects Internet access to go to a 20-minute meeting. Then he only has 20 minutes left on his account.

6.1.4 Built-in Authentication

The built-in authentication method is useful if you do not have a RADIUS server. You can use the built-in subscriber database to manage the subscribers. With the built-in authentication, the VSG provides three sets of preconfigured scenarios that you can choose for easy and simple setup. For billing, use either a PMS or the built-in billing mechanism to set up accounting information.

6.1.5 RADIUS

The VSG supports Remote Authentication Dial-In user Service (RADIUS). By integrating RADIUS with the VSG, you can set up the subscriber database on the RADIUS server. In addition to subscriber information, the subscriber database may hold the Internet usage time period each subscriber is allocated. For example, when a subscriber logs in, the RADIUS server will send the time allocation information (such as session time-out) to the VSG, which uses this information to control the subscriber's connection.

6.1.5.1 RADIUS Accounting

The VSG sends "accounting start" and "accounting stop" messages to the RADIUS server, which uses these messages to accurately track subscriber Internet usage.

6.1.5.2 Vendor Specific Attribute

With RADIUS server authentication, you can define vendor specific attributes (VSAs) in addition to the set of standard RADIUS attributes defined in RFC 2865 and RFC 2866. A VSA is an attribute-value pair that is sent between a RADIUS server and the VSG. It is necessary you define the VSAs on the RADIUS sever if you want the VSG to perform the following:

- Limit Download bandwidth per subscriber
- Limit Upload bandwidth per subscriber
- Limit Total traffic bandwidth allowed per subscriber
- Specify advertising web site per subscriber
- Enable/disable SMTP redirect



Note: Before you can make use of these functions on the VSG, configure the proprietary VSAs on the RADIUS server. Refer to the documentation that comes with your RADIUS server for more information.

See [Appendix D, "Vendor Specific Attributes," on page 239](#) for more information on the VSAs.

6.2 Authentication Settings

To configure the subscriber authentication method, click **System Setting** and **Authentication** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 29 System Setting: Authentication

| Authentication Configuration | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|--|---|--|-----------------------|--|--|--|------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|--|--|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Authentication Type | <p><input checked="" type="radio"/> No Authentication</p> <p><input type="radio"/> User Agreement</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"><input type="radio"/> Redirect URL Link <input type="text"/> Code</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"><input checked="" type="radio"/> Standard User Agreement page</p> <p><input type="radio"/> CAS (Hiton HSIA)</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Gateway Type: <input type="text" value="GEN"/></p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Property Code: <input type="text"/> (6 characters)</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Property ZIP: <input type="text"/> (4 ~ 10 characters)</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Redirect URL Link <input type="text" value="http://hsia.hamptoninn.com/hsia/servlet/Auth"/></p> <p><input type="radio"/> Built-in Authentication</p> <p>Three pre-configured options are provided for easy setup. Select an option that best suits your network needs. You must then proceed to configure the "Billing" and "Accounting" settings to complete your setup.</p> <p>Current preset option: Scenario C Select option</p> <p><input type="radio"/> RADIUS</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td colspan="2"><input checked="" type="radio"/> Accumulation</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"><input type="radio"/> Time to Finish (No idle timeout)</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="4">Primary RADIUS Server</td> <td>Server IP address <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Authentication Port <input type="text" value="0"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Accounting Port <input type="text" value="0"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shared Secret <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="4">Secondary RADIUS Server</td> <td>Server IP address <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Authentication Port <input type="text" value="0"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Accounting Port <input type="text" value="0"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shared Secret <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Retry Attempts when Primary failed</td> <td><input type="text" value="5"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Accounting Service</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable Update every: <input type="text" value="0"/> Min(s) </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Authentication Method</td> <td><input type="text" value="CHAP"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Vendor Specific Attribute</td> <td> Vendor Code <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Send VSA together with Authentication Request </td> </tr> </table> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Accumulation | | <input type="radio"/> Time to Finish (No idle timeout) | | Primary RADIUS Server | Server IP address <input type="text"/> | Authentication Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | Accounting Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | Shared Secret <input type="text"/> | Secondary RADIUS Server | Server IP address <input type="text"/> | Authentication Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | Accounting Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | Shared Secret <input type="text"/> | Retry Attempts when Primary failed | <input type="text" value="5"/> | Accounting Service | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable Update every: <input type="text" value="0"/> Min(s) | Authentication Method | <input type="text" value="CHAP"/> | Vendor Specific Attribute | Vendor Code <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Send VSA together with Authentication Request |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Accumulation | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Time to Finish (No idle timeout) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Primary RADIUS Server | Server IP address <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Authentication Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Accounting Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Shared Secret <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Secondary RADIUS Server | Server IP address <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Authentication Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Accounting Port <input type="text" value="0"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Shared Secret <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Retry Attempts when Primary failed | <input type="text" value="5"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Accounting Service | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable Update every: <input type="text" value="0"/> Min(s) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Authentication Method | <input type="text" value="CHAP"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Vendor Specific Attribute | Vendor Code <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Send VSA together with Authentication Request | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Idle Time Out | <input type="text" value="5"/> Min(s) (1 - 1440) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Current User Information Backup | <input type="text" value="10"/> Min(s) (1 - 1440) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SSL Login Security | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 17 System Setting: Authentication

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|--|
| No Authentication | Select this option to disable subscriber authentication. Subscribers can access the Internet without entering user names and passwords. This is the default setting. |
| User Agreement | Select User Agreement to direct a subscriber to an Internet service usage agreement page before accessing the Internet. |
| Redirect Page URL Link | Select this radio button to send the subscribers to a different web page for authentication. Specify the URL of the user agreement page in the field provided. Click Code to display the HTML source code of a default sample page. |
| Standard User Agreement page | Select this radio button to use the system's built-in user agreement page. |
| CAS (Hilton HSIA) | Select this option to use the Hilton Group proprietary CAS (Central Authentication Service) for HSIA. Then specify the fields below. |
| Gateway Type | Specify the type of this gateway from the drop-down list box. Select ZYL for ZyXEL devices. Otherwise, select GEN . |
| Property Code | Enter the provided property location code (up to five characters) for the hotel. This identifies the location of the Internet access request. |
| Property Zip | Enter the provided property zip code (between four and 10 characters). |
| Redirect Page URL Link | Specify the web site address of the login screen to which the hotel guests are directed for authentication using CAS. Note: The default web site address is already entered for you. You don't need to change this unless otherwise instructed by the Hilton HSIA support team. |
| Built-in Authentication | Select this option to authenticate the subscribers using the local subscriber database. Then click Select option to choose a per-configured setting in the Current Preset option field. Note: When you select this option, you <i>must</i> also configure the Billing and Accounting screens. Note: Time to finish accounting is available with the Built-in Authentication option. The RADIUS option allows you to use accumulation or time to finish accounting. |
| Current preset option | This field is available when you select Built-in Authentication . This field displays the current pre-configured setting for the built-in authentication. To select a predefined option, click Select option to open the Scenario Guide screen (refer to Figure 30 on page 77). |
| RADIUS | Select this option to authenticate subscribers using a remote RADIUS server. Then configure the following fields. |
| Accumulation | Select this option for multiple re-login until the time allocated is used up. If a subscriber logs out and accesses the Internet again within the time period specified in the Idle Timeout field, the subscriber does not have to enter the user name and password again to log in. |
| Time to Finish | Select this option to allow each subscriber a one-time login. If a subscriber logs out before the allocated time expires, the subscriber does not have to enter the user name and password to access the Internet again. |
| Primary/Secondary RADIUS Server | Server IP Address Enter the IP address of a RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation. |

Table 17 System Setting: Authentication (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Authentication Port | Specify the authentication port of the RADIUS server. The common port numbers are 1645 and 1812. |
| Accounting Port | Specify the accounting port of the RADIUS server. The common port numbers are 1646 and 1813. |
| Secret Key | Specify a password (up to 31 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the RADIUS server and the VSG. The key is not sent over the network. Note: This key must be the same on the RADIUS server and the VSG. |
| Retry Attempts when Primary fail | Specify the number of times (1 to 3) the VSG resends an authentication request to the primary and/or secondary RADIUS servers. |
| Accounting Service | Select Enable from the drop-down list box to activate the accounting feature and enter the time (in minutes) between updates in the Update every field. Select Disable to de-activate the accounting feature. |
| Authentication Method | Select either the CHAP or PAP authentication method from the drop-down list box. |
| Vendor Specific Attribute | In the Vendor Code field, specify a number for the vendor ID. This is an IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority) assigned number that identifies the vendor or enterprise. Enter 890 for ZyXEL devices. Select Send VSA together with Authentication Request to set the VSG to include the VSA information in the authentication requests. |
| Idle-Timeout | The VSG automatically disconnects a computer from the network after a period of inactivity. The subscriber may need to enter the username and password again before access to the network is allowed. Specify the idle timeout between 1 and 1440 minutes. The default is 5 minutes. |
| Current User Information Backup | This feature is applicable for built-in authentication. Select this option to back up account information every time interval specified (between 1 and 1440 minutes). The default time interval is 10 minutes. The account information includes unused dynamic accounts and accounts that are currently in use. |
| SSL Login Page Security | Select Enable to activate SSL security upon accessing the login screen so that user names and passwords are encrypted before being transmitted to the VSG. Select Disable to de-activate SSL security for the subscriber login screen. Refer to Chapter 25, "Secure Socket Layer," on page 189 for more information. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

6.2.1 Scenario Options



Note: This feature is for built-in authentication method only.

When you select **Built-in Authentication** in the **Authentication** screen, you must select a pre-configured scenario option by clicking the **Select option** link to display a screen as shown next.

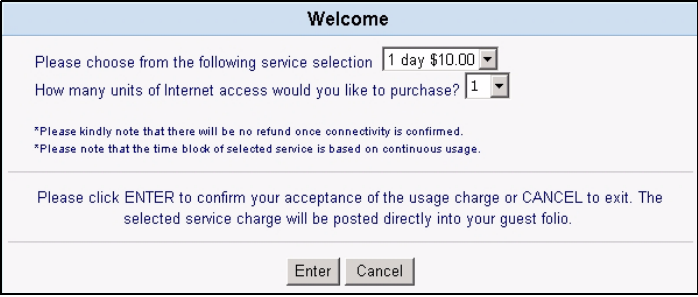
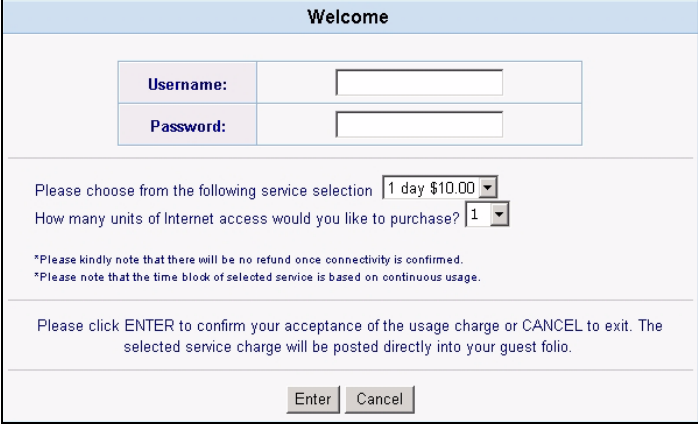
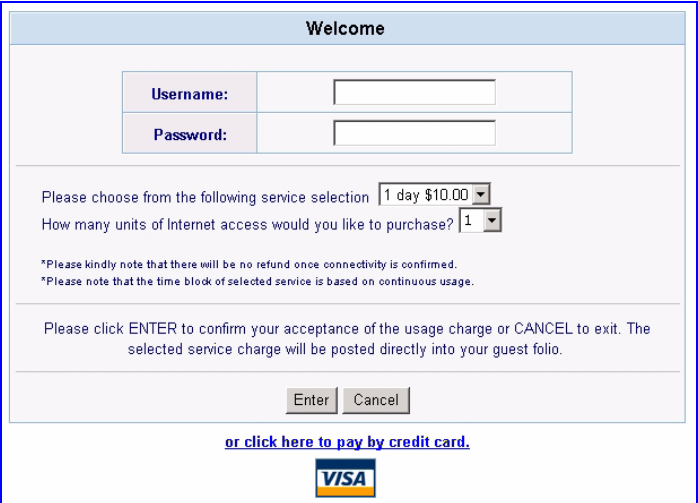
Select a scenario option in the **Items Check** field and click **Apply** to save the settings. Then proceed to configure the billing and accounting settings.

Figure 30 System: Authentication: Scenario Guide

| Scenario Guide | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Express way to fit your business model | | | |
| Items check | <input type="radio"/> Scenario A | <input type="radio"/> Scenario B | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Scenario C |
| PMS billing system | Yes | Yes | No |
| Infrastructure | Port-Location Mapping | General | General |
| Need username/password when guests go to Internet | No | Yes | Yes |
| Need to create static accounts | Option | Yes | Option |
| Allow guests to select service when first login | Yes | Yes | No |
| Billing mode | Time to Finish | Time to Finish | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Time to Finish <input type="radio"/> Accumulation Idle Timeout <input type="text" value="5"/> Min (s). (1 - 1440) Accumulation account will be deleted after logged in <input type="text" value="7"/> days <input type="text"/> |
| BillingCharge mode | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Based on Room <input type="radio"/> Based on Subscriber | - | - |
| Default Billing Profile | Need to continue configuring "Billing" and choose at lease one active billing profile | Need to continue configuring "Billing" and choose at lease one active billing profile | <input type="checkbox"/> Allow Credit Card Payment |
| Remarks | Need to continue configuring "Port-Location Mapping Table" | | |

The following table describes each scenario.

Table 18 System: Authentication: Scenario Guide

| OPTION | DESCRIPTION | SAMPLE SUBSCRIBER LOGIN SCREEN |
|------------|---|---|
| Scenario A | <p>Select this option to use PMS billing with port-location mapping. Once you configure the port-location mappings, subscribers are able to access the Internet without entering usernames and passwords. Subscribers can purchase additional time blocks with different billing plans.</p> <p>You can still create static or dynamic accounts. However, subscribers using the dynamic or static accounts are prompted for usernames and passwords.</p> | <p>Figure 31 Subscriber Login: Scenario A</p>  |
| Scenario B | <p>Select this option if you want to use PMS billing without port-location mapping. You must then create the subscriber accounts. Subscribers are prompted for their usernames and passwords before Internet access is allowed.</p> <p>Subscribers can purchase additional time blocks with different billing plans.</p> | <p>Figure 32 Subscriber Login: Scenario B</p>  |
| Scenario C | <p>Select this option to use the VSG's built-in or credit card billing function. You can select time to finish or accumulation accounting. No PMS device is needed.</p> | <p>Figure 33 Subscriber Login: Scenario C</p>  |

CHAPTER 7

Billing Profiles and PMS Configuration

This chapter shows you how to set up subscriber billing and PMS (Property Management System) configuration.

7.1 About Billing Profiles











A billing profile contains information such as time unit, unit cost and/or account expiration time. You must associate a subscriber account with a billing profile.

In addition, for PMS billing, subscribers may have a choice of purchasing additional time blocks with different billing profiles you set and activate on the VSG.

7.1.1 Creating a Billing Profile

You can create up to ten billing profiles on the VSG. Click **System Setting**, **Billing** and the **Billing Profile** link to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 34 System Setting: Billing: Billing Profile

| Billing Profile | | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|-----------|---------------|--|
| Currency: \$ <input type="text"/> (Number of decimals places: <input type="text"/>) | | | | |
| No | Active | Name | Description | Profile Setting |
| 01 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Profile 1 | 1 day \$10.00 | Edit  |
| 02 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 03 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 04 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 05 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 06 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 07 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 08 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 09 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | Edit  |
| | | | | Apply |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 System Setting: Billing: Billing Profile

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|---|
| Currency | Specify the type of currency and/or dollar sign for billing. |
| Number of decimal places | Specify the number of decimal places for the currency. The default is 2 . |
| No | This field displays the index number of a billing profile. |
| Active | Select this check box to enable the billing profile. |
| Name | This field displays the name of a billing profile. |
| Description | This field displays a description of a billing profile. |
| Profile Setting | Click Edit to edit the selected billing profile. Refer to Section 7.1.2 "Editing a Billing Profile" on page 80 for more information. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

7.1.2 Editing a Billing Profile

To edit a billing profile, click the **Edit** button in the **Billing Profile** screen to display the configuration screen for the selected billing profile.

Table 20 System Setting: Billing: Billing Profile Setting (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Duration | Select a time period (minute, hour, day, week, month or Unlimited) and enter the time unit in the field provided (not available for Unlimited). |
| Charge | Specify the unit cost in this field. |
| Check Time | Select Period Time Finish for time-to-finish billing method. Refer to Section 6.1.5 "RADIUS" on page 72 for more information. Select Expired when and specify the time from the drop-down list box(es) for the accumulate billing method. The subscriber accounts will be invalid once the allocated time period is used up. This option is only available when you select the Day, Week or Month option in the Period Time field. |
| Selective Unit | Specify the range of time units (between 1 and 99) a subscriber is allowed to purchase at any one time. The range is presented as a drop-down list box in the information pop-up window. |
| Bandwidth Limit | Note: You must activate bandwidth management to use this feature. Refer to Chapter 16, "Bandwidth Management," on page 141 . Set the fields below to configure the bandwidth limit for this billing profile. |
| Uplink Bandwidth Limitation | To use a pre-defined option, select the first option and choose a bandwidth from the drop-down list box. To manually set the bandwidth, select the second option and specify the bandwidth in the field provided. |
| Downlink Bandwidth Limitation | To use a pre-defined option, select the first option and choose a bandwidth from the drop-down list box. To manually set the bandwidth, select the second option and specify the bandwidth in the field provided. |
| Reset | Click Reset to restart configuring this screen again. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

7.2 PMS (Property Management System)

Many hotels use a PMS device to perform in-room billing for services (such as room service, mini-bar, pay-per-view TV or telephone) that the guests use.

With PMS, the VSG allows subscribers to purchase additional time units online. In addition, subscribers can select from a number of different billing plans.

To use PMS for billing, first connect the VSG to a PMS device using the **PMS** port (refer to [Chapter 2, "Hardware Installation and Connection," on page 35](#)), then configure the PMS settings on the VSG.

7.2.1 Port-Location Mapping Charge Modes

When you activate port-location mapping and PMS on the VSG, two charge modes are available: per room and per subscriber.

Select **Based on Room** when location is important. If a subscriber disconnects from one location and reconnects in another location, the VSG prompts for the user name and password again.

Select **Based on Subscriber** to allow a subscriber to freely move between different locations without prompting for user name and password.

7.2.2 PMS Configuration

Click **System Setting**, **Billing** and click the **PMS Configuration** link to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 36 System Setting: Billing: PMS Configuration

| PMS Configuration | | |
|---|--|--|
| Charge Mode (only for Port-Location Mapping enabled) | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Based on Room <input type="radio"/> Based on Subscriber | |
| Regenerate password of static account with PMS checkout | Enable <input type="button" value="v"/> (only for Scenario B) | |
| PMS Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Micros Fidelio <input type="radio"/> Spectrum MK II <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Revenue Code <input type="text" value="1"/> (1-99)</div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Description <input type="text" value="Internet"/></div> <input type="radio"/> Marriott <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Revenue Code <input type="text" value="1"/> (1-99)</div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Reference <input type="text" value="Internet"/></div> <input type="radio"/> Proprietary | |
| | Speed of PMS interface | <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Bits per second <input type="text" value="9600"/></div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Data bits <input type="text" value="8"/></div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Parity <input type="text" value="None"/></div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 2px;">Stop bits <input type="text" value="1"/></div> |
| | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 System Setting: Billing: PMS Configuration

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Charge Mode (only for Port-Location Mapping enabled) | <p>When you set up Port-Location Mapping, your VSG offers two billing modes: Based on Room and Based on Subscriber.</p> <p>Select Based on Room when location is important. If a subscriber disconnects from one location and reconnects in another location, the VSG prompts for the user name and password again.</p> <p>Select Based on Subscriber to allow a subscriber to freely move between different locations without prompting for user name and password.</p> <p>Note: You must activate the port-location mapping feature. Refer to Chapter 10, "Port-Location Mapping," on page 103.</p> |
| Regenerate password of static account with PMS checkout. | <p>This feature is applicable when you select Scenario B with Built-in Authentication in the Authentication screen (see Figure 29 on page 74).</p> <p>Select Enable to automatically generate a new password for the static account when a subscriber checks out.</p> <p>Select Disable to keep the password for the static account unchanged after a subscriber checks out.</p> |
| PMS Type | Select a PMS system and specify the fields below (if available). Currently the VSG supports Micros Fidelio , Spectrum MK II , Marriott and Proprietary . |
| Revenue Code | Enter a revenue code (between 01 and 99). |
| Description | Enter the description for the revenue. Refer to the user's guide that comes with your PMS device. |
| Speed of PMS Interface | <p>Set the fields below to configure the PMS port settings on the VSG.</p> <p>Note: Make sure the port settings are the same on the VSG and the connected PMS device.</p> |
| Bits per second | Select the speed of the PMS port connection. The default is 9600 . |
| Data bits | Specify the data bits. |
| Parity | Specify the parity. |
| Stop bits | Specify the data stop bits. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

7.3 Types of Subscriber Accounts

After you have set up the subscriber authentication methods and billing profile(s), you need to create subscriber accounts. There are two types of subscriber accounts: static and dynamic.

- For static accounts, refer to [Chapter 8, "Static Subscriber Accounts,"](#) on page 85.
- For dynamic accounts, refer to [Chapter 9, "Dynamic Subscriber Accounts,"](#) on page 95.

CHAPTER 8

Static Subscriber Accounts

This chapter shows you how to set up and manage static subscriber accounts.

8.1 About Static Subscriber Accounts

Static accounts are useful in locations such as hotels where you can match an account user name to a fixed location for easy management. Once a static subscriber account is created, it stays permanently in the VSG unless deleted manually. You can generate static accounts automatically or manually.

The following figure shows the links for accessing the static account configuration screens when you click **System Setting**, **Accounting** and **Static Accounts**.



Figure 37 Static Account: Links



8.2 Global Static Account Settings


To configure global static account settings, click the **Static Account Setting** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 38 Static Account Settings: Global Settings

| Static Account Setting | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Static Account Setting | |
| Concurrent Access | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Allow concurrent access with one account Max. concurrent access: <input type="text" value="2"/> |
| Customize Printout | Customize printout text |
| Print to... | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Statement Printer  <input type="radio"/> PC-Connected Printer  |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Static Account Settings: Global Settings

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| Concurrent Access | Select Allow concurrent access with one account to allow more than one users to access the Internet using the same account at the same time. Then specify the number of concurrent users from the Max. concurrent access drop-down list box. The default number of concurrent access is 2 users per account. |
| Customize Printout | Click Customize printout text to set the account printout page. Refer to Chapter 14, "Account Printout," on page 129 . |
| Print To | Select Statement Printer if you want to print the account information using a statement printer connected to the CONSOLE port on the VSG. Select PC-Connected Printer if you want to print the account information using a printer connected to a network computer. Click on the  icon to display a print preview. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the settings. |

8.3 Creating a Static Account

Click **System Setting, Accounts, Static Accounting** and **Create Static Account** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 39 System Setting: Create Static Subscriber Account

| Create Static Account | | | |
|--|---|-------------------------|--|
| Generate a batch of static accounts | | | |
| Prefix: | <input type="text"/> | From: | <input type="text" value="0"/> (Maximum 5 numbers) |
| Postfix: | <input type="text"/> | To: | <input type="text" value="0"/> (Maximum 5 numbers) |
| Billing Profile: | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> | Random Password Length: | <input type="text" value="8"/> |
| Note: For PMS billing type, use only numbers for subscriber accounts. | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | |
| Static Accounts backup and restore | | | |
| Backup | Click to save the account information to your computer. | | |
| Restore | To restore a previously saved account information file to your system, select this option, locate the account information file and click Apply. | | |
| | File Path: | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | |
| Manually Add Subscriber Account | | | |
| No. | Username: | Password: | Billing Profile |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | |

There are two ways to create static subscriber accounts as described in the following sections.

8.3.1 Generating Static Accounts Automatically

To generate a list of static subscriber accounts automatically, set the fields in **Generate a batch of static accounts** in the **Create Static Subscriber Account** screen.

Figure 40 Create Static Subscriber Account: Generate Automatically

| Generate a batch of static accounts | | | |
|--|--|-------------------------|--|
| Prefix: | <input type="text"/> | From: | <input type="text" value="0"/> (Maximum 5 numbers) |
| Postfix: | <input type="text"/> | To: | <input type="text" value="0"/> (Maximum 5 numbers) |
| Billing Profile: | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> | Random Password Length: | <input type="text" value="8"/> |
| Note: For PMS billing type, use only numbers for subscriber accounts. | | | |
| | | | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 23 Create Static Subscriber Account: Generate Automatically

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Generate a batch of static accounts | |
| Prefix | Specify the starting characters affixed to the beginning of all account user names. |
| Postfix | Specify the characters to append o the end of all account user names. |
| From | Enter the first number of the range of static accounts. |
| To | Enter the ending number of the range of static accounts. |
| Billing Profile | Select a predefined billing profile from the drop-down list box. Note: This drop-down list box displays active profiles only. Refer to Section 7.1.1 “Creating a Billing Profile” on page 79 for more information. |
| Random Password Length | The VSG automatically generates a password for each automatically created static account. Specify the length of the password from the drop-down list box. |
| Apply | Click Apply to start generating the static accounts based on the above criterion. |

After you have generated the list of static accounts in this screen click **Static Account List** to display the list of static accounts. Refer to [Section 8.6 “Viewing the Static Account List” on page 94](#).

8.3.2 Creating Static Subscriber Accounts Manually

To create static accounts manually, display the **Create Static Subscriber Account** screen and scroll down to the **Manually Add Static Subscriber Accounts** section as shown next. You can manually create up to 10 static accounts at a time.

Figure 41 Create Static Subscriber Account: Manual

| Manually Add Subscriber Account | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| No. | Username: | Password: | Billing Profile |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | Profile 1 ▾ |
| | | | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 24 Create Static Subscriber Account: Manual

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--|
| No | This read-only field displays the index number of an entry. |
| Username | Enter the user name for a static subscriber account. |
| Password | Enter the password associated with the user name above. You may also set the VSG to generate a password automatically (refer to Section 8.5 "Editing Subscriber Accounts" on page 92). |
| Billing Profile | From the drop-down list box, select a billing profile for the static account. Note: This drop-down list box displays active profiles only. Refer to Section 7.1.1 "Creating a Billing Profile" on page 79 for more information. |
| Apply | Click Apply to create the static account(s) and save the changes. |

8.4 Static Account List Backup and Restore

You can back up and restore static account information in the **Create Static Account** screen.

8.4.1 Backing Up a Static Account List

Follow the steps below to back up static subscriber account information to your computer.

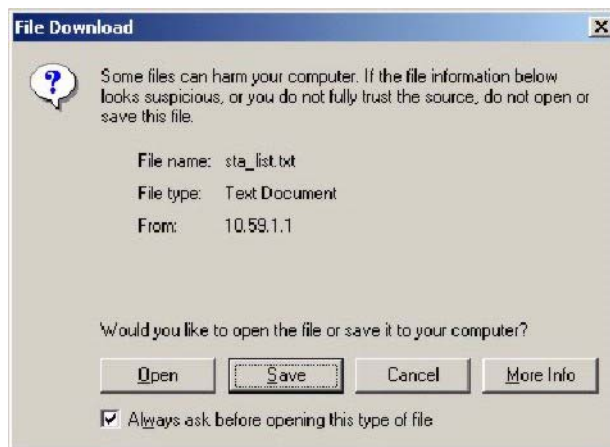
- 1 In the **Create Static Subscriber Account** screen and scroll down to the **Static Accounts backup and restore** section.
- 2 Click **Backup**.

Figure 42 Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore

| Static Accounts backup and restore | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Backup | Click to save the account information to your computer. |
| Restore | To restore a previously saved account information file to your system, select this option, locate the account information file and click Apply. File Path: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

- 3 A **File Download** window displays. Click **Save**.

Figure 43 Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore: File Download



- 4 A **Save As** window displays. Specify the filename and/or location and click **Save** to save the backup file.

Figure 44 Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore: Save As

You can view the backed up file using any text-editing program.

8.4.2 Restoring a Static Account List

You may restore the static account list if you accidentally reset the VSG back to the factory defaults and erased the subscriber account information.

Follow the steps below to restore a previously backed up subscriber account list.

- 1 In the **Create Static Subscriber Account** screen and scroll down to the **Static Accounts backup and restore** section.

Figure 45 Static Subscriber Account: Backup and Restore



| Static Accounts backup and restore | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Backup | Click to save the account information to your computer. |
| Restore | To restore a previously saved account information file to your system, select this option, locate the account information file and click Apply. File Path: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

- 2 Specify the location and/or file name of the account information file in the **File Path** field or click **Browse** to locate it.
- 3 Click **Apply** to start the file transfer process. The VSG automatically restarts after the file transfer is complete.

8.5 Editing Subscriber Accounts


To edit a subscriber account, click **System Setting, Accounting** and the **Static Account Operator** link to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 46 Static Account Operator

| Static Account Operator | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------|---------------|----------------------|----------|---------|---|
| refresh ↻ | | | | | | Print List |
| No. | Username | Show Password | Re-Generate Password | ALL | Status | Print |
| 1 | Cindy | | Re-Generate Password | | Offline |  |
| 2 | VIP | | Re-Generate Password | | Offline |  |
| GO 1 Page | | First | | Previous | Next | End |
| | | | | | | Apply |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 25 Static Account Operator

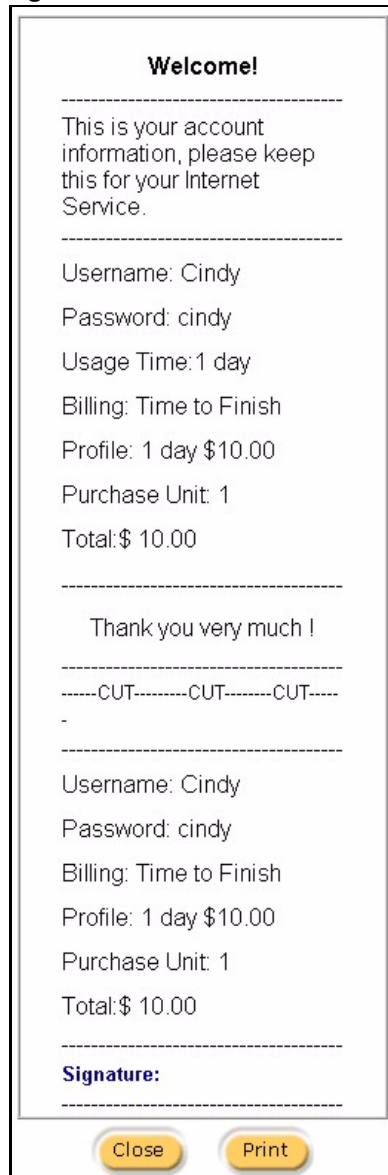
| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Refresh | Click this button to update the screen. |
| Print List | Click this button to print a list of all subscriber accounts. |
| No | This read-only field displays the index number of an entry. |
| Username | This read-only field displays the account user name. Click the heading to sort the entries in ascending or descending order. |
| Hide Password/ Show Password | Click Hide Password to not display the passwords for the accounts on the screen. Click Show Password to display the passwords for the accounts on the screen. |
| Re-Generate Password | You may set the VSG to generate a new password for each account. Click All to set the VSG to generate new passwords for all accounts. Click Re-Generate Password to set the VSG to generate a new password for the corresponding account. |
| Status | This field indicates whether the account is currently in use (Online) or not (Offline). |
| Print | Click the  icon to print the account information of the selected account. |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

8.5.1 Static Account Information Print Preview

To display a printout preview of static account information, click the **Print** icon to display a printout preview window showing the account information. An example is shown in the following figure.

Refer to [Section 14.1.1 “Customizing the Account Printout” on page 129](#) to configure the printout page.

Figure 47 Static Account Information Printout Example



The image shows a printout preview window with a white background and a black border. At the top, the word "Welcome!" is centered in bold. Below it is a dashed line, followed by the text "This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service." and another dashed line. The account details are listed: "Username: Cindy", "Password: cindy", "Usage Time: 1 day", "Billing: Time to Finish", "Profile: 1 day \$10.00", "Purchase Unit: 1", and "Total: \$ 10.00". Another dashed line follows, then the text "Thank you very much !". Below that is a dashed line, then the text "-----CUT-----CUT-----CUT-----" and a dash "-". Another dashed line follows, then the account details are repeated: "Username: Cindy", "Password: cindy", "Billing: Time to Finish", "Profile: 1 day \$10.00", "Purchase Unit: 1", and "Total: \$ 10.00". At the bottom, there is a dashed line, then the word "Signature:" in bold, and another dashed line. At the very bottom, there are two yellow buttons with black text: "Close" and "Print".

8.6 Viewing the Static Account List

To display the static account list, click **Static Account List**.

Figure 48 Static Account List

| Static Account | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------|----------|-----------------|-----------|-------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---------|--------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| refresh | | | | | | | | | | Backup | Print List | | |
| No. | Username | Password | Billing Profile | | Concurrent Access | First Login | Expiration | Status | Delete | | | | |
| 1 | Cindy | cindy | 1 | Profile 1 | 1 | 2004/10/22 12:00:28 | 2004/10/23 12:00:28 | Online | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | |
| 2 | VIP | vip | | None | 0 | | | Offline | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | Delete | Delete All | | | |
| 1 Page | | | | | | | | | | First | Previous | Next | End |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 26 Static Account List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------|---|
| Refresh | Click Refresh to update this screen. |
| Backup | Click Backup to backup the account information to a computer. |
| Print List | Click Print List to print ALL account information on a printer connected to the computer you use to access the web configurator. Note: This does NOT display a print preview window. |
| No | This field displays the index number. |
| Username | This field displays the account user name. Click the heading to sort the entries in ascending or descending order based on this column. |
| Password | This field displays the account password. |
| Billing Profile | This field displays the name of the profile associated to the account. |
| Concurrent Access | This field displays the number of users are currently using this account for Internet access. |
| First Login | This field displays the time a subscriber logs in using the account. |
| Expiration | This field displays the time the account becomes invalid. |
| Status | This field indicates whether the account is currently is use (Online) or not (Offline). |
| Delete | Click Delete All to remove all accounts. Click Delete to remove the selected account(s). |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |

CHAPTER 9

Dynamic Subscriber Accounts

This chapter shows you how to set up and manage dynamic subscriber accounts.

9.1 About Dynamic Subscriber Accounts

Unlike a static account, a dynamic account is not permanent. Once the time allocated to a dynamic account is used up or a dynamic account remains un-used after the expiration time, the account is deleted from the account list automatically.

Dynamic accounts are automatically generated either by pressing a button on an external statement printer connected to the **CONSOLE** port or using the web configurator (the **Dynamic Account Operator Panel** screen).



Note: You cannot manually add a dynamic account.

The following figure displays the links for accessing the dynamic account configuration screens when you click **System Setting**, **Accounting** and **Dynamic Account**.

Figure 49 Dynamic Account: Links



9.2 Dynamic Account General Settings

There are two ways you can create dynamic accounts on the VSG:

- using a statement printer connected to the VSG.
- using the web configurator.



Before you create dynamic accounts, you must specify the billing profile(s), the number of printout copies and the number of hours before the VSG automatically deletes an inactive account. Refer to the related sections for more information.

For creating dynamic accounts using a statement printer, make sure you connect the statement printer (sold separately) to the **CONSOLE** port on the VSG. Then, in the **Dynamic Account Setting** screen, select the profile setting for each button on the statement printer (refer to the user's guide that comes with the statement printer).

For web-based dynamic account generation, you can specify up to four billing profiles (one for each of the four buttons you click to generate the accounts automatically on the web-based screen).

Click **System Setting**, **Accounting**, **Dynamic Account**, and then **Dynamic Account Setting** link to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 50 Accounting: Dynamic Account Setting


| Dynamic Account Setting | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| Dynamic Accounts can be created automatically when you click the button from the Web-based Dynamic Account Operator or the Statement Printer. | | | |
| Web-based Dynamic Account Operator/ Statement Printer Settings | | | |
| Web based Button | SP Button | Button name <small>(Max. 12 characters)</small> | Billing Profile: |
| Button 1 | SP200 Button A | <input type="text" value="Button 1"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| Button 2 | SP200 Button B | <input type="text" value="Button 2"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| Button 3 | SP200 Button C | <input type="text" value="Button 3"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| Button 4 | - | <input type="text" value="Button 4"/> | <input type="text" value="Profile 1"/> |
| General Settings | | | |
| Unused Accounts | Automatically delete after <input type="text" value="12"/> hours | | |
| Printout copy | Number of copies to print: <input type="text" value="1"/> Customize printout text | | |
| Print to... | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Statement Printer  <input type="radio"/> PC-Connected Printer  | | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

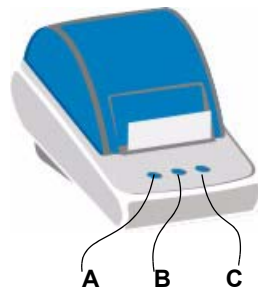
Table 27 Accounting: Dynamic Account Setting

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Web-based Dynamic Account Operator/ Statement Printer Settings | |
| Web-based Button | This read-only field displays the button index number (Button 1 .. 4). The button numbers correspond to the buttons displayed in the Dynamic Account Operator Panel screen. Refer to Section 9.3.1 “Dynamic Account Generation Using the Web Configurator” on page 97 for more information. |
| SP Button | This read-only field displays the button label on the SP-200. Refer to Figure 51 on page 97 . Refer to Section 9.3.2 “Dynamic Account Generation Using a Statement Printer” on page 98 for more information on generating dynamic accounts using a statement printer. |
| Button name | Specify the name of the web-based button (up to 12 characters) in the field provided. The buttons are displayed in the Dynamic Account Operator Panel screen (see Figure 52 on page 98). |

Table 27 Accounting: Dynamic Account Setting (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Billing Profile | Select a billing profile to associate to the web-based and SP buttons from the drop-down list box. Only the activated billing profiles are displayed. Refer to Section 7.1.1 “Creating a Billing Profile” on page 79 for more information on creating billing profiles. |
| General Settings | |
| Unused Accounts | Specify the number of hours to wait before the VSG deletes an inactive dynamic account. |
| Printout copy | Select the number of copies (1 to 3) to print from the drop-down list box. Click Customize printout text to configure the printout page. |
| Print to ... | Select Statement Printer if you want to print the account information using a statement printer connected to the CONSOLE port on the VSG. Select PC-Connected Printer if you want to print the account information using a printer connected to a network computer. Click the  icon to display a print preview. Refer to Chapter 14, “Account Printout,” on page 129 for more information. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

The following figure shows the button labels on the SP-200.

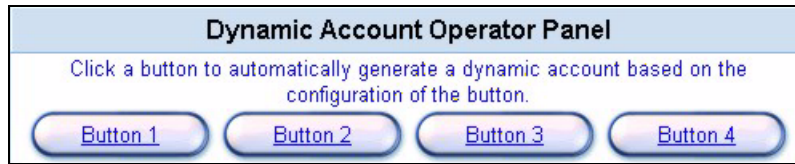
Figure 51 SP-200 Button Labels

9.3 Creating Dynamic Accounts

You can only create dynamic accounts automatically. You can create dynamic accounts using either the web configurator screen or the statement printer.

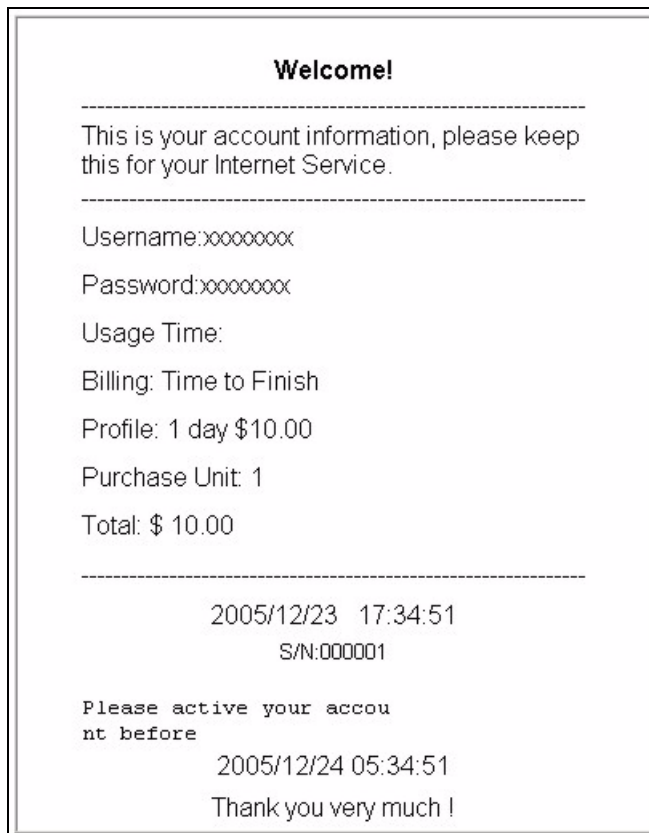
9.3.1 Dynamic Account Generation Using the Web Configurator

Display the **Dynamic Account Operator Panel** screen as shown next.

Figure 52 Dynamic Account Operator Panel

Click a button to generate a dynamic account based on the settings you configure for the button in the **Dynamic Account Setting** screen. A window displays showing a printout preview of the dynamic account generated.

The following figure shows an example. Refer to [Chapter 14, “Account Printout,”](#) on page 129 on account printout to configure the printout page.

Figure 53 Dynamic Account Information Printout Example

9.3.2 Dynamic Account Generation Using a Statement Printer

Follow the steps below to create dynamic accounts and print the account information using a statement printer.



Note: You have to purchase a statement printer separately.

- 1 Connect the statement printer to the port labeled **CONSOLE**. Refer to [Section 2.2 “Hardware Connections”](#) on page 36 for more information.
- 2 Configure the **Console Type** field in the **System** screen. Refer to [Section 3.5 “General System Setting”](#) on page 44.
- 3 Turn on the statement printer and make sure there is printing paper.
- 4 Press the button on the statement printer. A dynamic account is generated and the account information should be printed. Refer to [Figure 84 on page 134](#) for a printout example.



Note: The settings of the buttons on the statement printer correspond to the three SP-200 buttons you set in the **Dynamic Account Operator Panel** screen. Refer to [Section 9.2 “Dynamic Account General Settings”](#) on page 95.

9.4 Viewing the Dynamic Account List

To display the dynamic account list, click **Dynamic Account List**. Click a heading to sort the entries in ascending or descending order based on the column if applicable.

Figure 54 Dynamic Account List

| Dynamic Account List | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------|----------|-----------------|------------------------|-------------|------------------------|------------|--------------------------|------------|--------|------------|------|-----|
| refresh ↻ | | | | | | | | | | Backup | Print List | | |
| S/N | Username | Password | Billing Profile | Time Created | First Login | Expiration | Status | Delete | | | | | |
| 1 | bwh2y936 | 6tj27289 | 1 Profile 1 | 2004/10/21 11:53:06 | | 2004/10/21 23:53:06 | Not In Use | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | Delete | Delete All | | | | |
| GO 1 Page | | | | | | | | | | First | Previous | Next | End |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 28 Dynamic Account List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|---|
| Refresh | Click Refresh to update this screen. |
| Backup | Click Backup to backup the account information to a computer. Refer to Section 9.4.1 “Backing Up the Dynamic Account List” on page 100. |
| Print List | Click Print List to print all account information to the local printer connected to the computer that you use to configure the VSG. Note: This does NOT display a printout preview window. |
| S/N | This field displays the serial number (or the Index number) of a dynamic account. |
| Username | This field displays the account user name. Click the heading to sort the entries in ascending or descending order based on this column. |
| Password | This field displays the account password. |

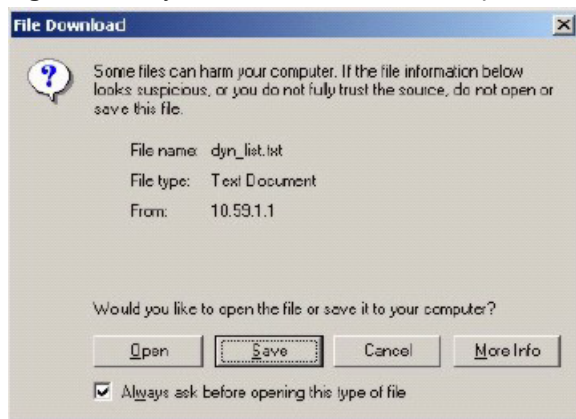
Table 28 Dynamic Account List (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|---|
| Billing Profile | This field displays the index number and the name of a billing profile the account is using. |
| Time Created | This field displays the time the account is created. |
| First Login | This field displays the time a subscriber logs in using the account. |
| Expiration | When an account is currently in use, this field displays the time before which a subscriber can still use the account to access the Internet. When an account is never used, this field displays the time the account becomes invalid. |
| Status | This field displays In Use when the account is currently in use. Otherwise it displays Not In Use . |
| Delete | Click Delete All to remove all accounts. Click Delete to remove the selected account. |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |

9.4.1 Backing Up the Dynamic Account List

Follow the steps below to backup the dynamic account list to your computer.

- 1 Display the **Dynamic Account Setting** screen (refer to [Figure 50 on page 96](#)).
- 2 Click **Dynamic Account List** (refer to [Figure 54 on page 99](#)).
- 3 Click the **Backup** link.
- 4 A **File Download** window displays. Click **Save**.

Figure 55 Dynamic Account List Backup: File Download

- 5 A **Save As** window displays. Specify the filename and/or location and click **Save**.

Figure 56 Dynamic Account List Backup: Save As

You can view the backed up file using any text-editing program.

CHAPTER 10

Port-Location Mapping

This chapter describes the port-location mapping feature.

10.1 About Port-Location Mapping

With port-location mapping, you can map a port on the VSG or a VLAN-enabled switch to a room number in a building (such as a hotel). This is done using IEEE802.1q VLAN tags. The port-location mapping feature is used together with the PMS billing function so charges can be done automatically.

10.2 Configuring Port-Location Mapping



Note: Make sure you select **Built-in Authentication** and **Scenario A** in the **Authentication** screen (see [Figure 29 on page 74](#)) and configure the **PMS Configuration** screen (see [Figure 36 on page 83](#)).

Click **System Setting** in the navigation panel and the **Port-Location Mapping** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 57 System Setting: Port-Location Mapping

Port-Location Mapping

Single Create

| | | | |
|--|----------------------|----------------------|--|
| Location Identifier (ID) | <input type="text"/> | Port Identifier (ID) | <input type="text"/> |
| Description | <input type="text"/> | | |
| Status: <input type="radio"/> No Charge <input checked="" type="radio"/> Charge for use <input type="radio"/> Blocked | | | |
| | | | <input type="button" value="Add to List"/> |

Batch Create

| | | | | | |
|--|----------------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------|--|
| Location ID From: | <input type="text"/> | Port ID From: | <input type="text"/> | Batch Numbers: | <input type="text"/> |
| Status: <input type="radio"/> No Charge <input checked="" type="radio"/> Charge for use <input type="radio"/> Blocked | | | | | |
| | | | | | <input type="button" value="Add to List"/> |

Note:For 802.1q device, use only numbers for the **Location Identifier** field.

Backup/Restore

| | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------------------------|---|------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | Backup to Local PC | | | | |
| Backup | Remote TFTP Server IP Address: | <input type="text"/> | File Name: | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |
| | Local PC File Path | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> | | | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |
| Restore | Remote TFTP Server IP Address: | <input type="text"/> | File Name: | <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

Port-Location Mapping List

| Location ID | Port ID | Description | Status | Delete |
|-------------|---------|-------------|--------|---|
| | | | | <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Delete All"/> |

GO 1 Page

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 29 System Setting: Port-Location Mapping

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------|--|
| Single Create | Set the related fields to create a port-location mapping one at a time. |
| Location Identifier (ID) | Enter an identity (up to 20 characters) for a mapping. This field must match the VLAN ID of a port. |
| Port Identifier (ID) | Enter the an ID number (between 1 and 999999) of a port for this mapping. This is the location ID number you set in the PMS. |
| Description | Enter a description (up to 32 characters) for this mapping for identification purposes. |

Table 29 System Setting: Port-Location Mapping (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|--|
| Status | <p>Select No Charge if you don't want to bill a subscriber accessing the Internet at this port location.</p> <p>Select Charge for use to bill a subscriber accessing the Internet at this port location.</p> <p>Select Blocked to stop any subscriber from accessing the Internet at this port location.</p> |
| Add to List | Click Add to List to insert a new mapping rule. |
| Batch Create | Set the related fields to create a specified number of port-location mappings. |
| Location ID From | Enter an identity (up to 20 characters) of the first location for a mapping. This field must match the VLAN ID of a port. |
| Port ID From | Enter the an ID number (between 1 and 999999) of the starting port for this mapping. This is the location ID number you set in the PMS. |
| Batch Numbers | Specify the number of port-location mappings you want to create at a time. |
| Status | <p>Select No Charge if you don't want to bill a subscriber accessing the Internet at this port location.</p> <p>Select Charge for use to bill a subscriber accessing the Internet at this port location.</p> <p>Select Blocked to stop any subscriber from accessing the Internet at this port location.</p> |
| Add to List | Click Add to List to insert a new mapping rule. |
| Backup/ Restore | You can back up or restore the port-location mappings. |
| Backup | <p>Click Backup to Local PC to save the current port-location mappings to a computer.</p> <p>To back up the current port-location mapping to a TFTP server, specify the IP address of the TFTP server and the file name in the fields provided and click Apply.</p> |
| Restore | <p>Make sure you have previously backed up the port-location mapping.</p> <p>Note: All current port-location mappings will be lost.</p> <p>To restore from a local computer, specify the name and location of the backup file or click Browse .. to locate it and click Apply.</p> <p>To restore from a TFTP server, specify the IP address of the TFTP server and the file name in the fields provided and click Apply.</p> |
| Port-Location Mapping List | This table displays a summary of each mapping rule. If applicable, click on a heading to sort the entry. |
| Location ID | This field displays the ID of a mapping rule. |
| Port ID | This field displays the port ID. |
| Description | This field displays a description. |
| Status | This field displays the status (No Charge , Charge for use or Blocked) of a mapping. |
| Delete | <p>Click Delete All to remove all accounts.</p> <p>Click Delete to remove the selected account.</p> |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |

Table 29 System Setting: Port-Location Mapping (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|---|
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |

CHAPTER 11

Credit Card Billing and Customization

This chapter shows you how to configure secure online credit card service on the VSG and customize the subscriber credit card information screen.

11.1 Credit Card Billing Overview

Your VSG is integrated with the Authroize.net and SecurePay online secure credit card billing service providers, allowing you to process credit card transactions via the Internet.



Note: You must register with the Authorize.Net credit card service (www.authorizenet.com or www.authorize.net) or the SecurePay credit card service (www.securepay.com.au) before you can configure the VSG to handle credit card transactions.

11.1.1 How Credit Card Billing Works

The following summarizes the process of how a customer pays for a subscriber account using a credit card.

- 1 A customer accesses the subscriber login screen and selects credit card payment.
- 2 The customer selects a service type and enters contact and billing information.
- 3 Customer billing information is processed real-time via the secure online credit card billing service.
- 4 After the transaction is successful, the VSG provides the username and password information so the customer can log in for Internet access.

11.1.2 Configuration Steps

Do the following to allow credit card service.

- 1 Obtain an account with Authorize.net or SecurePay.
- 2 In the **Authentication** screen, select **Built-in Authentication** and allow credit card payment with Scenario C (refer to [Section 6.2 “Authentication Settings” on page 73](#) for more information).
- 3 Enter your account information in the **Credit Card** screen.






- 4 Configure the subscriber credit card information screen (see [Chapter 12, “Subscriber Login Screen,”](#) on page 117 for more information).

11.2 Setting up Credit Card Billing Service

After you have obtained an Authorize.net or SecurePay account, set up the online credit card billing information in the **Credit Card** screen.

Click **Advanced Setting, Credit Card** to displays the screen as shown below. Enter your account information in this screen.

Figure 58 Advanced Setting: Credit Card

| Credit Card | |
|---|--|
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Authorize.net | |
| Version | 3.1 |
| Merchant ID | <input type="text"/> |
| Merchant Password | <input type="checkbox"/> Need Password: <input type="text"/> |
| Merchant Transaction Key | <input type="text"/> |
| Payment Gateway | https:// <input type="text" value="secure.authorize.net/gateway/transact.dll"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Email Additional Information | <input type="checkbox"/> Merchant Name: <input type="text"/> (max. 40 characters) <input type="checkbox"/> Username and Password <input type="checkbox"/> Usage Time |
| <input type="radio"/> Secure Pay | |
| Merchant ID | <input type="text"/> (max. 7 characters) |
| SecurePay Address | https://www.securepay.com.au/securepay/paym |
| Credit Card icons to be displayed on the login page | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> BankCard | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Advanced Setting: Credit Card

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|---|
| Authorize.net | Select this option to use the Authorize.Net online credit card service for billing subscribers. |
| Version | This is the (read-only) software version of the Authorize.Net payment gateway. |
| Merchant ID | Enter the IDentification number that you received from Authorize.Net. |

Table 30 Advanced Setting: Credit Card (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Merchant Password | Select Need if a password is required for the Authroize.net account. Then enter the password exactly as you received it from Authorize.Net in the Password field. |
| Merchant Transaction Key | Enter the transaction key exactly as you received it from Authorize.Net. The transaction key is similar to a password. The Authorize.Net gateway uses the transaction key to authenticate transactions. |
| Payment Gateway | Enter the address of the Authorize.Net gateway. The default value is "https://cardpresent.authorize.net/gateway/transact.dll". Note: You don't need to change this address unless instructed by an Authorize.net administrator. |
| Email Additional Information | Select this check box to have the VSG e-mail the subscriber the information that you specify in the following fields. |
| Merchant Name | Select this check box to have the VSG include the company name in the e-mail that it sends to the subscriber. Enter the company name (up to 40 characters) in the field provided. |
| Username and Password | Select this check box to have the VSG e-mail the subscriber the subscriber user name and password. |
| Usage Time | Select this check box to have the VSG e-mail the subscriber the amount of usage time purchased. |
| Secure Pay | Select this option to use the Secure Pay online credit card service for billing subscribers. |
| Merchant ID | Enter the merchant ID exactly as you received it from SecurePay. |
| SecurePay Address | Enter the address of the SecurePay server. The default value is "https://www.securepay.com.au/securepay/payments/process2.asp". Note: You don't need to change this address unless instructed by a Secure Pay administrator. |
| Credit card icons to be displayed on the login page | Select the check box(es) of the credit card icon(s) that you want the VSG to display on the subscriber login screen (refer to Figure 33 on page 78 for an example). |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

11.3 Customizing Subscriber Credit Card Information Screen

After you have entered your account information in the **Credit Card** screen, you may customize the credit card information screen the subscribers use.


Click **Advanced, Customization** and click the **Credit Card** link to display the **Credit Card Customization** screen. Configure the fields in this screen and click **Apply** to save the changes.

11.3.1 Subscriber Standard Login Page Message

If you use the standard subscriber login screen, you can specify a message to re-direct credit-card-paying subscribers to the credit card information screen.


In the **Credit Card Customization** screen, enter the message in the **Credit Card Message** field and click **Apply** to save the changes.

Figure 59 Credit Card Customization: Standard Login Screen Message

| | | |
|----------------------------|---|--|
| Standard Login Page | Customize the additional credit card message for the standard login page | |
| | Credit Card Message | <input type="text" value="or Click here to pay by credit card"/> <small>(Max:80 characters)</small> |
| | |  Preview of Standard Login Page |

Click **Preview of Standard Login Page** to display a preview screen.

Figure 60 Credit Card Customization: Standard Login Screen Message: Preview

| Welcome | |
|---|--------------------------|
| Username: | <input type="text"/> |
| Password: | <input type="password"/> |
| Please choose from the following service selection <input type="text" value="1 day \$10.00"/> | |
| How many units of Internet access would you like to purchase? <input type="text" value="1"/> | |
| <small>*Please kindly note that there will be no refund once connectivity is confirmed. *Please note that the time block of selected service is based on continuous usage.</small> | |
| Please click ENTER to confirm your acceptance of the usage charge or CANCEL to exit. The selected service charge will be posted directly into your guest folio. | |
| <input type="button" value="Enter"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> | |
| or click here to pay by credit card. | |
|  | |

11.3.2 Service Selection Page

Specify the service selection and credit card messages to display on the subscriber login screen in the **Credit Card Customization** screen.

Figure 61 Credit Card Customization: Service Selection Page

| Service Selection Page | |
|--|---|
| Customize the message for the service selection page | |
| Service Selection Message | Please choose from the following service selecti (Max. 80 characters) |
| Purchase Unit Message | How many units of Internet access would you like (Max. 80 characters) |
| Notification Message 1 | *Please kindly note that there will be no refund on (Max. 160 characters) |
| Notification Message 2 | *Please note that the time block of selected servi (Max. 160 characters) |
| Notification Message 3 | (Max. 160 characters) |
| Enter Payment Information | Enter Payment Information (all info is required) (Max. 160 characters) |
| Enter Credit Card Number | Credit Card Number: (Max. 80 characters) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Card Verification Value | Credit Card Code (Max. 40 characters) |
| Enter Credit Card expiration date | Credit Card Expiration Date: (Max. 80 characters) |
| Enter Email Address | Enter Email Address (Max. 80 characters) |
| Submit Button | Submit Transaction and Login (Max. 40 characters) |
| Additional Customer Data Merchants may provide additional customer information with a transaction, based on their respective requirements. | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Customer ID | Customer ID: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> First/Last Name | First Name: <input type="text"/> Last Name: <input type="text"/> (Max. 20 characters) (Max. 20 characters) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Company | Company: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Address | Address: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> City | City: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> State/Province | State/Province: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ZIP/Postal Code | ZIP/Postal Code: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Country | Country: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Phone | Phone: (Max. 40 characters) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Fax | Fax: (Max. 40 characters) |
| Preview of Service Selection Page | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Credit Card Customization: Service Selection Page

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Service Selection Page | |
| Customize the message for the service selection page. | Specify the service selection messages in the fields provided. |
| Service Selection Messages | Enter a message to instruct the subscribers to select a billing profile. |
| Purchase Unit Message | Enter a message to instruct the subscribers to select the number of time units to purchase. |
| Notification Message 1 .. 3 | Enter additional message(s) regarding the replenish feature. For example, you may enter a refund policy. |
| Enter Payment Information | Enter the heading label name to prompt for the payment information. |
| Enter Credit Card Number | Enter the label name of a field in which subscribers enter the credit card number. |
| Card Verification Value | Select this check box to display this field if you need the subscriber to enter the credit card's 3 or 4 digit Card Verification Value/Code (CVV or CVC). Specify the label name of a field in which subscribers enter the credit card's CVV. |
| Enter Credit Card expiration date | Enter the label name of a field in which subscribers enter the expiration date of the credit card. |
| Enter Email Address | Enter the field label for the subscriber's e-mail address. The VSG sends the subscriber account information to this e-mail address if you enable the feature in the Credit Card screen (refer to Section 11.2 "Setting up Credit Card Billing Service" on page 108 for more information). |
| Submit Button | Enter the label of the button on which subscribers clicks to send the information in the screen. |
| Additional Customer Data | If you want to obtain more information from the subscribers, select the checkbox(es) and specify the corresponding field label(s). |
| Customer ID | Select this check box to display this field and enter the field label for customer ID information. |
| First/Last Name | Select this check box to display these two fields and specify the field labels for the subscriber to enter the first and last names. |
| Company | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of a field in which subscribers enter a company name. |
| Address | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of a field in which subscribers enter their addresses. |
| City | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of a the field in which subscribers enter the city. |
| State/Province | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of the field in which subscribers enter the state or province name. |
| Zip/Postal Code | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of the field in which subscribers enter the ZIP or postal code. |
| Country | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of the field in which subscribers enter the country. |

Table 31 Credit Card Customization: Service Selection Page (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Phone | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of a field in which subscribers enter the phone numbers. |
| Fax | Select this check box to display this field and specify the label name of the field in which subscribers enter the fax numbers. |
| Preview of the Service Selection Page | Click Preview of the Service Selection Page for a preview screen (see Figure 62 on page 113 for an example). |

The following figure shows an example of the subscriber credit card information screen. Field labels display in red are the required fields.

Figure 62 Credit Card Customization: Service Selection Page: Preview

Welcome

Please choose from the following service selection ▾

How many units of Internet access would you like to purchase? ▾

*Please kindly note that there will be no refund once connectivity is confirmed.
*Please note that the time block of selected service is based on continuous usage.

Enter Payment Information (all info is required)

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Credit card number: | <input type="text"/> |
| Credit card expiration date: | <input type="text"/> (MMYY) |
| Enter Email Address | <input type="text"/> |
| First Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Last Name: | <input type="text"/> |
| Address: | <input type="text"/> |
| City: | <input type="text"/> |
| State/Province: | <input type="text"/> |
| ZIP/Postal Code: | <input type="text"/> |
| Country: | <input type="text"/> |
| Phone: | <input type="text"/> |

Submit Transaction and Login


11.3.3 Successful Screen

You can customize the notification screen to display on the subscriber's computer when the credit card is validated and the transaction is successful.

Scroll down the **Credit Card Customization** screen and configure the **Successful Page** fields and click **Apply** to save the changes.

Figure 63 Credit Card Customization: Successful Page

| Successful Page | Customize the message for the successful page |
|------------------------|---|
| Successful Message | <input type="text" value="You may now use the Internet !"/> (Max. 80 characters) |
| Notification Message 1 | <input type="text" value="IMPORTANT! Make a note of your username and p"/> (Max. 160 characters) |
| Notification Message 2 | <input type="text"/> (Max. 160 characters) |
| Account Information | <input type="text" value="This is your account information, please keep this f"/> (Max. 160 characters) |
| Username | <input type="text" value="Your username is"/> (Max. 80 characters) |
| Password | <input type="text" value="Your password is"/> (Max. 80 characters) |
| Usage Time | <input type="text" value="Your usage time is"/> (Max. 80 characters) |
| Expiration Time | <input type="text" value="Please activate your account before"/> (Max. 80 characters) Format: <input type="text" value="yyyy/mm/dd"/> <input type="text" value="HH:mm:ss"/> (HH:24h hh:12h tt:AM/PM) |
| Email Button | <input type="text" value="Email this webpage to myself"/> (Max. 40 characters) |
| Submit Button | <input type="text" value="Use this account to LOGIN now"/> (Max. 40 characters) |

 [Preview of Successful Page](#)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 Credit Card Customization: Successful Page

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Successful Message | Enter a message to notify the subscribers that the credit card validation is successful. |
| Notification Message 1 .. 2 | Enter additional message(s). For example, you may enter a refund policy. |
| Account Information | Enter the caption for the account information. |
| Username | Enter the label name for the username field. |
| Password | Enter the label name for the password field. |
| Usage Time | Enter the label name for the usage time field. |
| Expiration Date | Enter the label name for the expiration date field. |
| Email Button | Enter the label name for the e-mail button the subscribers click to have the VSG e-mail this information in this screen to the subscribers. |
| Submit Button | Enter the label name for the button the subscribers click to confirm and log in for I |
| Preview of Successful Page | Click Preview of Successful Page for a preview screen (see Figure 64 on page 115 for an example). |

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 64 Credit Card Customization: Successful Page: Preview

| Welcome | |
|---|----------|
| You may now use the Internet ! | |
| IMPORTANT! Make a note of your username and password for logging in later. This will be your only opportunity to do so. Note upper and lowercase letters. | |
| This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service. | |
| Your username is | XXXXXXXX |
| Your password is | XXXXXXXX |
| Your usage time is | XX:XX:XX |
| Please activate your account before XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX:XX | |
| <input type="button" value="Email this webpage to myself"/> <input type="button" value="Use this account to LOGIN now"/> | |


11.3.4 Fail Page

You can customize the notification screen to display on the subscriber's computer when the credit card is not validated or the transaction is not successful.

Scroll down the **Credit Card Customization** screen and configure the **Fail Page** fields and click **Apply** to save the changes.

Figure 65 Credit Card Customization: Fail Page

| Fail Page | Customize the message for the fail page |
|------------------------|---|
| Notification Message 1 | <input type="text" value="SORRY, your card could not be processed at this ti"/> <small>(Max. 160 characters)</small> |
| Notification Message 2 | <input type="text" value="Please use your backspace button and try again wi"/> <small>(Max. 160 characters)</small> |
| Notification Message 3 | <input type="text" value="Thank you!"/> <small>(Max. 160 characters)</small> |
| Try Again Button | <input type="text" value="Try Again"/> <small>(Max. 40 characters)</small> |
| Close Button | <input type="text" value="Close"/> <small>(Max. 40 characters)</small> |

 [Preview of Fail Page](#)

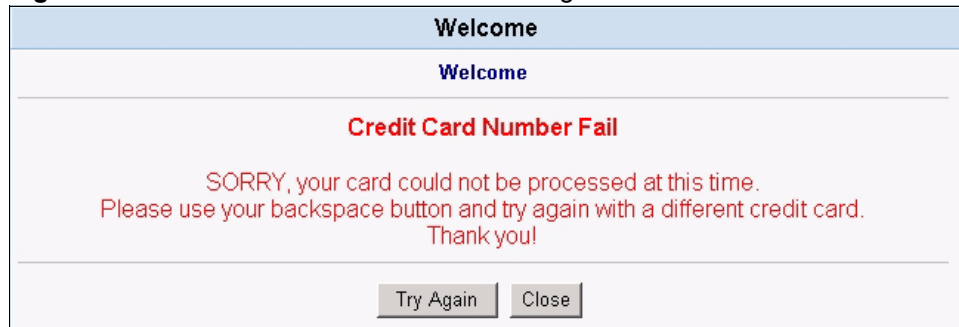
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 33 Credit Card Customization: Fail Page

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Notification Message 1 .. 3 | Enter additional message(s). For example, why the transaction failed. |
| Try Again Button | Enter the label name for the button subscribers click to display the screen in which the subscribers can enter the credit card information again. |
| Close Button | Enter the label name for the button subscribers click to close this screen. |
| Preview of Fail Page | Click Preview of Fail Page for a preview screen (see Figure 66 on page 116 for an example). |

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 66 Credit Card Customization: Fail Page: Preview



CHAPTER 12

Subscriber Login Screen

This chapter shows you how to customize the subscriber login screen when subscriber control is activated.

12.1 About the Subscriber Login Screen


When subscriber authentication is activated in the **Authentication Configuration** screen, the subscriber login screen is the first screen that all subscribers see when trying to access the Internet. You can configure walled garden web addresses for web sites which all subscribers are allowed to access without logging in (refer to [Section 17.4 “Walled Garden” on page 147](#)).

The VSG provides different formats in which you can customize the login screen: **Standard**, **Redirect**, **Advanced** and **Frame**.

12.2 Customizing Subscriber Login Screen

To customize the subscriber login screen, click **Advanced Setting**, **Customization** and then **Login Page** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 67 Customization: Login

| Login Page | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|----------------|---|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|--------------------|---|--------------------------|--|-------------|----------------------|----------|----------------------|
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Standard | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Title</td> <td><input type="text" value="Welcome"/> (Max. 80 characters)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Footnote</td> <td><input type="text" value="Please contact us if you have any ques"/> (Max. 240 characters)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Copyright</td> <td><input type="text" value="Copyright (c) 2001, 2002 All Rights Res"/> (Max. 80 characters)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Background Color</td> <td><input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid</td> </tr> </table> <p align="right"> Standard Login Page Preview</p> | Title | <input type="text" value="Welcome"/> (Max. 80 characters) | <input type="checkbox"/> Footnote | <input type="text" value="Please contact us if you have any ques"/> (Max. 240 characters) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Copyright | <input type="text" value="Copyright (c) 2001, 2002 All Rights Res"/> (Max. 80 characters) | Background Color | <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid | | | | | | |
| Title | <input type="text" value="Welcome"/> (Max. 80 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Footnote | <input type="text" value="Please contact us if you have any ques"/> (Max. 240 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Copyright | <input type="text" value="Copyright (c) 2001, 2002 All Rights Res"/> (Max. 80 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Background Color | <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Redirect | Redirect Login Page URL: <input type="text"/> Code | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Advanced | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Welcome Slogan</td> <td><input type="text" value="Welcome"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Page Background</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Background Color <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Article</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Use User Agreement's Article </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Article Text Color</td> <td><input type="text" value="000000"/> View Color Grid</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Article Background Color</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Information</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Comments</td> <td><input type="text"/></td> </tr> </table> | Welcome Slogan | <input type="text" value="Welcome"/> | Page Background | <input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Background Color <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid | Article | <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Use User Agreement's Article | Article Text Color | <input type="text" value="000000"/> View Color Grid | Article Background Color | <input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid | Information | <input type="text"/> | Comments | <input type="text"/> |
| Welcome Slogan | <input type="text" value="Welcome"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Page Background | <input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> Background Color <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Article | <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> Use User Agreement's Article | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Article Text Color | <input type="text" value="000000"/> View Color Grid | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Article Background Color | <input checked="" type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Information | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Comments | <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="radio"/> Frame | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Top Frame</td> <td>URL: <input type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bottom Frame</td> <td>This frame will show the standard login page</td> </tr> </table> | Top Frame | URL: <input type="text"/> | Bottom Frame | This frame will show the standard login page | | | | | | | | | | |
| Top Frame | URL: <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Bottom Frame | This frame will show the standard login page | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Service Selection customization | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Service Selection Message | <input type="text" value="Please choose from the following service se"/> (Max. 80 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Purchase Unit Message | <input type="text" value="How many units of Internet access would you"/> (Max. 80 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Notification Message 1 | <input type="text" value="*Please kindly note that there will be no refur"/> (Max. 160 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Notification Message 2 | <input type="text" value="*Please note that the time block of selected"/> (Max. 160 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Notification Message 3 | <input type="text"/> (Max. 160 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Additional Remark | <input type="text" value="Please click ENTER to confirm your accepti"/> (Max. 240 characters) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

12.2.1 Standard Subscriber Login Screen

The standard subscriber login screen is the VSG's pre-configured, default simple login screen. You can modify the screen color and title and add copyright information and a footnote.

In the **Login Screen Configuration** screen, select **Standard**.

Figure 68 Customization: Login: Standard

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 34 Customization: Login: Standard

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Standard | Select this option to use the standard subscriber login screen. |
| Title | Enter the login page title (up to 80 characters) in the field provided. |
| Footnote | Select this check box and enter up to 240 characters in the field provided to add the footnote to the login screen. |
| Copyright | Select this check box and enter the copyright information (up to 80 characters) in the field provided to add copyright information to the login screen. |
| Background Color | Specify the color of the registration text. For example, enter '000000' for black. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. The default is black ("000000"). |
| Standard Login Page Preview | Save the settings and click this link to preview the standard login screen in a new browser window. |

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 69 Subscriber Login Screen Example: Standard



Note: For credit card settings, refer to [Chapter 11, “Credit Card Billing and Customization,”](#) on page 107.

12.2.2 Redirect Subscriber Login Screen

You can set the VSG to redirect the subscribers a to another login screen.

In the **Login Screen Configuration** screen, select **Redirect**.

Figure 70 Customization: Login Screen: Redirect

The following table describes the related fields.

Table 35 Customization: Login Screen: Redirect

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Redirect | Select this option to redirect the subscriber to another login screen. |
| Redirect Login Page URL | Specify the web site address to which the VSG directs the subscribers for logins. |
| Code | Click Code to display the source code of the web page you specify above. |

12.2.3 Advanced Subscriber Login Screen

Use the **Advanced** login screen option to customize a login screen where you can create a welcome slogan and add advertising information.

Figure 71 Customization: Login Screen: Advanced

The following table describes the related fields.

Table 36 Customization: Login Screen: Advanced

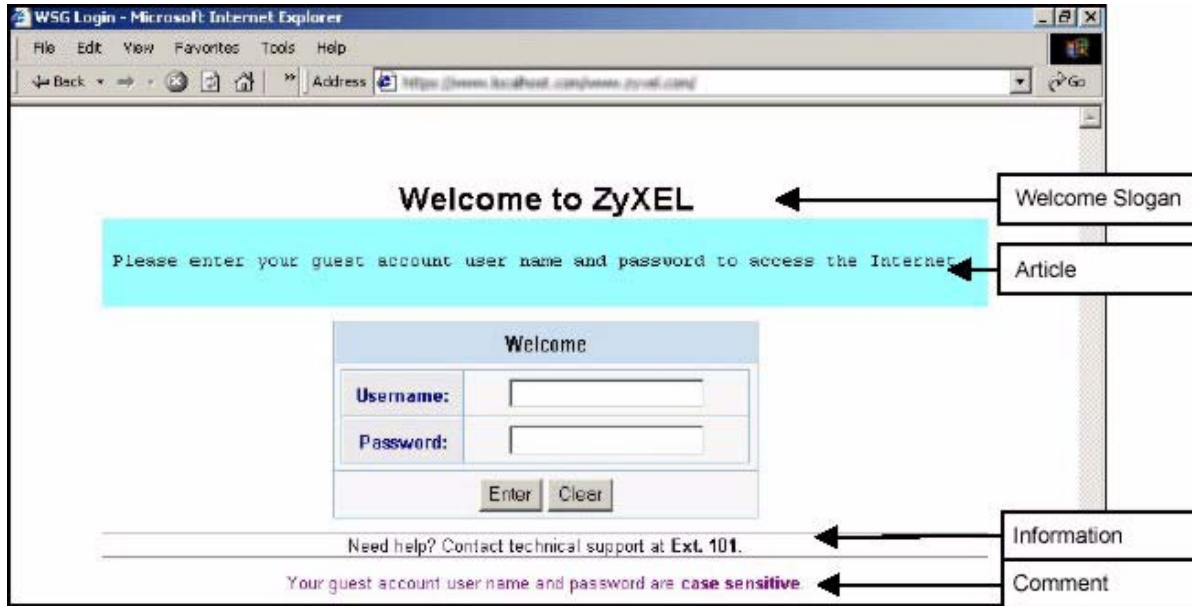
| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|--|
| Advanced | Select this option to set the VSG to display the advanced subscriber login screen. |
| Welcome Slogan | Enter a welcome message (up to 80 characters long) in the text box provided. |
| Page Background | Select None to set the background color of the login screen to white ("FFFFFF" the default). Select Background Color to set the color of the login screen background to the color specified, for example, enter '000000' for black. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. |
| Article | Select this option to use a custom message on the login screen. Enter a block of text (up to 1024 characters long) in the text box. This is useful for advertisements or announcements. |
| Use User Agreement's Article | Select this option to use the article from the user agreement page in the login screen. |
| Article Text Color | Set the color of the article text. For example, use '000000' for black. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. |
| Article Background Color | Select None to set the background color of the article text block to white ("FFFFFF" the default). Select Background Color to set the background color of the article text block to the color specified, for example, enter '000000' for black. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. |

Table 36 Customization: Login Screen: Advanced (continued)

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|--|
| Information | Enter information such address and telephone or fax numbers in the text box provided. Up to 80 characters allowed. |
| Comments | Enter any comments (up to 80 characters long) in the text box provided. |

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 72 Subscriber Login Screen Example: Advanced



12.2.4 Frame Subscriber Login Screen

The **Frame** login screen splits the login screen into two frames: top and bottom. You can specify a web site to be displayed in the top frame with the user name and password prompt displayed in the bottom frame. The frame login screen is useful for you to link to a web site (such as the company web site) as your welcome screen. In addition, you can externally design a web page with images and/or advanced multimedia features.

Figure 73 Customization: Login Screen: Frame

| | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------|--|
| <input type="radio"/> Frame | Top Frame | URL: <input type="text"/> |
| | Bottom Frame | This frame will show the standard login page |

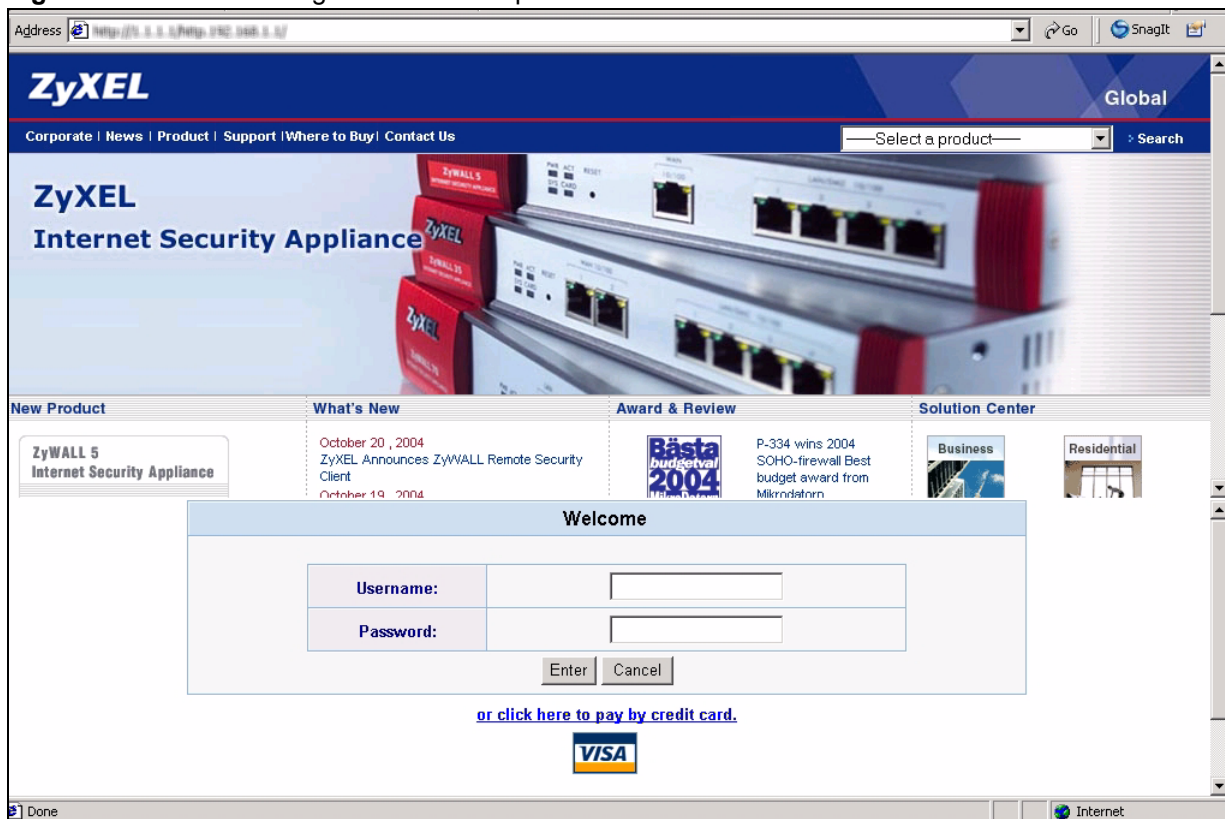
The following table describes the related fields.

Table 37 Customization: Login Screen: Frame

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|--|
| Frame | Select this option to configure and set the VSG to display the subscriber login screen in two frames. |
| Top Frame | Enter a web site address in the URL field, for example, http://www.zyxel.com . |
| Bottom Frame | The bottom frame of the subscriber login screen displays the default login prompt. You cannot configure this part of the screen. |

The following figure shows a framed subscriber login screen example.

Figure 74 Subscriber Login Screen Example: Frame



12.2.5 Service Selection Messages

The service selection messages are available in the subscriber login screen *only* when you configure the VSG to use PMS billing.

Figure 75 Customization: Service Selection Customization

| Service Selection customization | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Service Selection Message | Please choose from the following service selection (Max. 80 characters) |
| Purchase Unit Message | How many units of Internet access would you like to purchase? (Max. 80 characters) |
| Notification Message 1 | *Please kindly note that there will be no refund once connectivity is confirmed. (Max. 160 characters) |
| Notification Message 2 | *Please note that the time block of selected service is based on continuous usage. (Max. 160 characters) |
| Notification Message 3 | (Max. 160 characters) |
| Additional Remark | Please click ENTER to confirm your acceptance of the usage charge or CANCEL to exit. The selected service charge will be posted directly into your guest folio. (Max. 240 characters) |

The following table describes the related labels.

Table 38 Customization: Service Selection Customization

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Service Selection Customization | |
| Service Selection Messages | Enter a message to instruct the subscribers to select a billing profile. |
| Purchase Unit Message | Enter a message to instruct the subscribers to select the number of time units to purchase. |
| Notification Message 1 .. 3 | Enter additional message(s) regarding the replenish feature. For example, you may enter a refund policy. |
| Additional Remark | Enter any additional information. For example, enter contact information for help. |

The following figure shows an example of a standard subscriber login screen with the service selection messages.

Figure 76 Subscriber Login Screen Example: Service Selection Messages

Welcome

Username:

Password:

Please choose from the following service selection 1 day \$10.00 ▼

How many units of Internet access would you like to purchase? 1 ▼

*Please kindly note that there will be no refund once connectivity is confirmed.

*Please note that the time block of selected service is based on continuous usage.

Please click ENTER to confirm your acceptance of the usage charge or CANCEL to exit. The selected service charge will be posted directly into your guest folio.

CHAPTER 13

Subscriber Information Window

This chapter shows you how to customize the subscriber information window.

13.1 About the Information Window

You can set the VSG to display an information window after a subscriber has successfully logged in. This information window shows the amount of time a subscriber has used or the time the subscriber still has to access the Internet.

The subscriber information window varies depending on the billing and accounting configuration you set on the VSG.

The information window displays the amount of time used for Internet access when you select **Built-in Authentication** in the **Authentication Configuration** screen or when you select **RADIUS Server** and the RADIUS server is configured not to send session timeout messages.


The information window displays the amount of time a subscriber still has to use for Internet access when you select **RADIUS Server** in the **Authentication Configuration** screen and the RADIUS server is configured to send session timeout messages.

13.1.1 Customizing the Information Window

Click **Advanced Setting**, **Customization** and the **Information Window** link to display a screen as shown next.

To display the information window on the subscriber's computer after a successful login, select the **Display Information Window once after the subscriber logs in successfully** check box.

Figure 77 Customization: Information Window

| Information Window | |
|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display Information Window once after a subscriber logs in successfully | |
| Window Name | <input type="text" value="Information Window"/> (Max. 30 character) |
| Main message | <input type="text" value="You can use Internet now!"/> (Max. 30 character) |
| Message Description | <input type="text" value="This is an information window to sl"/> (Max. 150 character) |
| Usage count label | Standard usage count time/traffic label or RADIUS with session timeout <input type="text" value="Remaining Usage"/> (Max. 30 character) |
| | without session timeout <input type="text" value="Connecting Usage"/> (Max. 30 character) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Warning/Alarm message | <input type="text" value="If you don't want to continue using"/> (Max. 150 character) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Notice Message | Notice Text 1 <input type="text" value="Notice!"/> (Max. 150 character) |
| | Notice Text 2 <input type="text" value="If you are going to use VPN, pleas"/> (Max. 150 character) |
| | Notice Text 3 <input type="text"/> (Max. 150 character) |
|  Preview | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen that you set to customize the information window.

Table 39 Customization: Information Window

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|--|
| Window Name | Enter a descriptive name (up to 30 characters) as the title of the window. |
| Main message | Enter a short message (up to 30 characters). |
| Message Description | Enter a short description about the information window. |
| Usage count label | Enter the label for the field displaying the remaining time in the first text box provided. This field displays when the VSG is set to use proprietary or RADIUS server (without session timeout messages) authentication. Enter the label for the field displaying the amount of time used in the second text box provided. This field displays when the VSG is set to use RADIUS (without session timeout messages) authentication. |
| Warning/Alarm Messages | Select this check box to display the warning message that you enter in the text box provided. |
| Notice Message | Select this check box to display any additional message(s) that you enter in the test box(es) provided. You can specify up to three additional messages (such as discount information) in the information window. |
| Preview | Click to display a preview of the information window. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

The following figure shows an information window example.

Figure 78 Subscriber Pop-up Information Window Example



CHAPTER 14

Account Printout

This chapter describes how you can customize and display a preview of the information of an account.

14.1 About the Account Printout

After you have created the subscriber accounts, you can print out the account information. The printout page is different for static and dynamic subscriber accounts.

14.1.1 Customizing the Account Printout

To customize the account printout, click **Advanced Setting, Customization** and click the **Account Printout** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 79 Customization: Account Printout

| Account Printout Customization | |
|--|---|
| Title: | <input type="text" value="Welcome!"/> (Max.=23) |
| Subtitle: | <input type="text" value="This is your account information, please keep this for y"/> (Max.=80) |
| Username: | <input type="text" value="Username:"/> |
| Password: | <input type="text" value="Password:"/> |
| Usage Time: | <input type="text" value="Usage Time:"/> |
| Billing Method: | <input type="text" value="Billing:"/> |
| Billing Profile: | <input type="text" value="Profile:"/> |
| Purchase Unit: | <input type="text" value="Purchase Unit"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Additional Label 1: | ESSID: <input type="text"/> Value: <input type="text"/> (Max.=23) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Additional Label 2: | WEP: <input type="text"/> Value: <input type="text"/> (Max.=23) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Price: | <input type="text" value="Total:"/> |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Account Create Time: | <input type="text" value="yyyy/mm/dd"/> <input type="text" value="HH:mm:ss"/> (HH:24h hh:12h tt:AM/PM) |
| Expire | Description: <input type="text" value="Please activate your account before"/> (Max.=72) |
| | Date/Time: <input type="text" value="yyyy/mm/dd"/> <input type="text" value="HH:mm:ss"/> (HH:24h hh:12h tt:AM/PM) |
| | Accumulation: <input type="text" value="After your first logged-in, please finish your usage time within"/> (Max.=96) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ending: | <input type="text" value="Thank you very much !"/> (Max.=23) |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Serial Number | |

- [Preview of PC-connected printer for **static account** printout](#)
- [Preview of account generator printer with **static account** printout](#)
- [Preview of PC-connected printer for **dynamic account** printout](#)
- [Preview of account generator printer with **dynamic account** printout](#)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 Customization: Account Printout

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| Title | Enter a title (up to 24 characters) for the printout. |
| Subtitle | Enter a subtitle (up to 80 characters) for the printout. |
| Username | Enter the label name for the field displaying the account username. |
| Password | Enter the label name for the field displaying the account password. |
| Usage Time | Enter the label name for the field displaying the amount of time an account is allowed for Internet access. |
| Billing Method | Enter the label name for the field displaying the method for billing. |
| Billing Profile | Enter the label name for the field displaying the name for the billing profile used. |
| Purchase Unit | Enter the label name for the field displaying the number of time units purchased. |
| Additional Label 1.. 2 | Select this check box to display the specified label name(s) for the field(s) displaying any additional information. For example, you can specify additional information such as ESS ID and/or WEB key for wireless stations when you connect an access point to the VSG. |
| Price | Select this check box to display the specified label name for the field displaying the total price. |
| Account Create Time | Select this check box to display the time an account is created. Select date and time formats from the drop-down list boxes. |
| Description | Enter text to explain that the user needs to activate the Internet access account before the expiration date and time. |
| Date/Time | Select the formats to use when displaying the expiration dates and times. |
| Accumulation | This description applies with accumulation billing. Enter text to explain that the user needs to finish using the purchased Internet access time before the expiration date and time. |
| Ending | Select this check box to display a message to display at the end of the printout. Enter the message in the text box provided. |
| Serial Number | Select this check box to display a serial number on the printout. |
| Preview of PC-Connected printer for Static Account printout. | Click this link to display a preview of a static account printout as it would print on a printer connected to a computer. |
| Preview of account generator printer with Static Account printout. | Click this link to display a preview of a static account printout as it would print on an external account generator printer (or the Statement Printer). |
| Preview of PC-Connected printer for Dynamic Account printout. | Click this link to display a preview of a dynamic account printout as it would print on a printer connected to a computer. |
| Preview of account generator printer with Dynamic Account printout. | Click this link to display a preview of a dynamic account printout as it would print on an external account generator printer (or the Statement Printer). |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |



Note: The account information printout for a static account varies depending on whether PMS billing is used or not.

The following figures show the account printout examples.

Figure 80 Static Account Printout Example

| Welcome! | |
|--|-----------------|
| This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service. | |
| Username: | x000000x |
| Password: | x000000x |
| Billing: | Time to Finish |
| Profile: | 1 day \$10.00 |
| Purchase Unit: | 1 |
| Total: | \$ 10.00 |
| <i>Thank you very much !</i> | |
| ----- cut ----- cut ----- cut ----- | |
| Username: | x000000x |
| Billing: | Time to Finish |
| Profile: | 1 day \$10.00 |
| Purchase Unit: | 1 |
| Total: | \$ 10.00 |
| Signature: | |
| 2006/1/11 11:09:40 | |
| <input type="button" value="Close"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/> | |

Figure 81 Static Account with PMS Billing Printout Example

| Welcome! | |
|--|----------|
| This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service. | |
| Username: | x000000x |
| Password: | x000000x |
| <i>Thank you very much !</i> | |
| <input type="button" value="Close"/> <input type="button" value="Print"/> | |

Figure 82 Static Account Printout: Statement Printer Example

Welcome!

This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service.

Username:xxxxxxxx
Password:xxxxxxxx
Usage Time:
Billing: Time to Finish
Profile: 1 day \$10.00
Purchase Unit: 1
Total: \$ 10.00

Thank you very much !

-----CUT-----CUT-----CUT-----

Username:xxxxxxxx
Password:xxxxxxxx
Billing: Time to Finish
Profile: 1 day \$10.00
Purchase Unit: 1
Total: \$ 10.00

Signature:

2006/1/11 11:12:04

Figure 83 Static Account with PMS Billing Printout: Statement Printer Example

| | |
|--|----------|
| Welcome! | |
| ----- | |
| This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service. | |
| ----- | |
| Username: | xxxxxxxx |
| Password: | xxxxxxxx |
| ----- | |
| Thank you very much ! | |

Figure 84 Dynamic Account Printout Example

| | |
|--|----------------|
| Welcome! | |
| This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service. | |
| Username: | xxxxxxxx |
| Password: | xxxxxxxx |
| Billing: | Time to Finish |
| Profile: | 1 day \$10.00 |
| Purchase Unit: | 1 |
| Total: \$ 10.00 | |
| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> S/N:000001 2006/1/11 11:07:28 </div> <p>Please activate your account before 2006/1/11 23:07:28</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Thank you very much !</i></p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: center; gap: 20px;"> Close Print </div> | |

Figure 85 Dynamic Account Printout: Statement Printer Example

Welcome!

This is your account information, please keep this for your Internet Service.

Username:xxxxxxxx
Password:xxxxxxxx
Usage Time:
Billing: Time to Finish
Profile: 1 day \$10.00
Purchase Unit: 1
Total: \$ 10.00

2006/1/11 11:08:32
S/N:000001

Please activate your account before
2006/1/11 23:08:32

Thank you very much !

CHAPTER 15

User Agreement Page

This chapter describes how you can customize and display a preview of the subscriber user agreement page.

15.1 About the User Agreement Page

In cases where authentication is not required and anyone can access the Internet through the VSG, you can set the VSG to require users to accept a service usage agreement before they can access the Internet. The VSG has a built-in user agreement page that you can customize.

15.2 Customizing the User Agreement Page

To customize the user agreement page, click **Advanced Setting, Customization** and click the **User Agreement Page** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 86 Customization: User Agreement Page

| User Agreement Page | |
|--|--|
| Title | <input type="text" value="User Agreement Page"/> (Max. 100 characters) |
| Title Text Color | <input type="text" value="000000"/> View Color Grid |
| Article | <input type="text" value="Example. Type your message text here."/> (Max. 12000 characters) |
| Article Text Color | <input type="text" value="000000"/> View Color Grid |
| Article Background Color | <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid |
| Page Background Color | <input type="text" value="FFFFFF"/> View Color Grid |
| Agree Button | <input type="text" value="Agree"/> (Max. 50 characters) |
| Disagree Button | <input type="text" value="Do not agree"/> (Max. 50 characters) |
| Standard User Agreement Page Preview | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

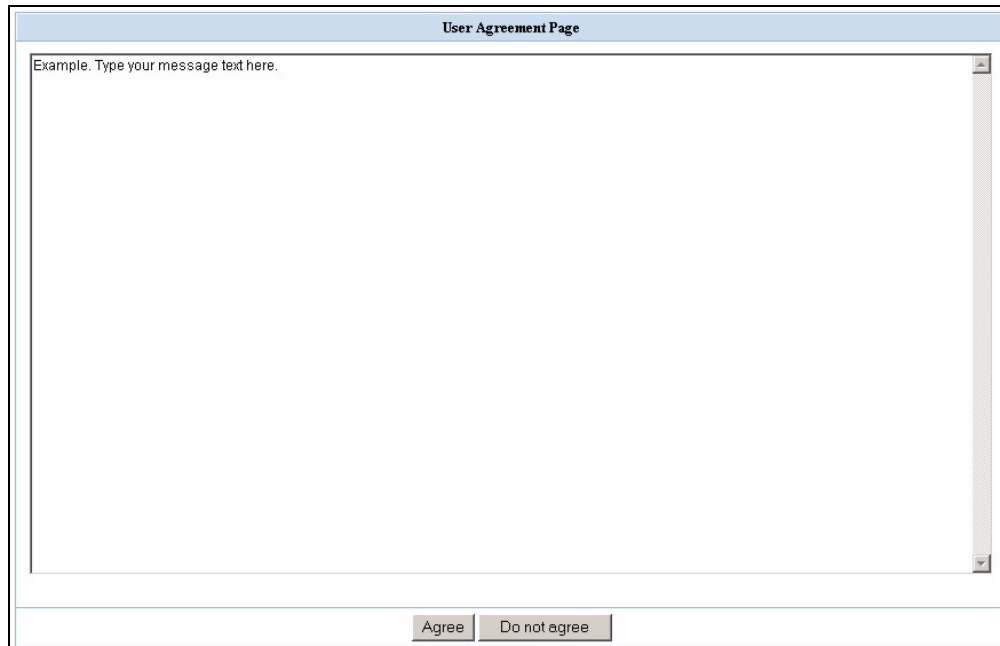
Table 41 Customization: User Agreement Page

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| Title | Enter a title (up to 100 characters) for the user agreement page. |
| Title Text Color | Set the color of the title text. For example, use '000000' for black. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. |
| Article | Enter a block of text (up to 12000 characters long) in the text box. This is the restrictions or conditions that you want the user to agree to before allowing Internet access. |
| Article Text Color | Set the color of the article text. For example, use '000000' for black. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. |

Table 41 Customization: User Agreement Page (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Article Background Color | Set the background color for the article. For example, use 'FFFFFF' for white. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. |
| Page Background Color | Set the background color for the page. For example, use 'FFFFFF' for white. Click View Color Grid to display a list of web-friendly colors and corresponding hexadecimal values. |
| Agree Button | Enter the label name for the button the subscribers click to accept the service usage agreement before they can access the Internet. |
| Disagree Button | Enter the label name for the button the subscribers click to decline the service usage agreement. They will not be able to access the Internet. |
| Standard User Agreement Page Preview | Click this link to preview the standard user agreement screen in a new browser window. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

The following figure shows a user agreement page example.

Figure 87 User Agreement Page Example


The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "User Agreement Page". Inside the window, there is a large text area with the placeholder text "Example. Type your message text here." At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "Agree" and "Do not agree".

CHAPTER 16

Bandwidth Management

This chapter describes the bandwidth feature and shows you how to configure bandwidth control.

16.1 Bandwidth Management Overview

Bandwidth management allows you to control the amount of outbound and inbound traffic on the LAN. This helps reduce delays and dropped packets due to busy network traffic. On the VSG, outbound traffic refers to network traffic coming from a LAN port to the WAN port whereas inbound traffic refers to network traffic coming from the WAN port to a LAN port.

16.1.1 Bandwidth Allocation

The VSG provides two types of bandwidth control based on a subscriber's computer MAC address: equal share or class-based.

With equal share bandwidth allocation, the VSG allocates an equal amount of outgoing and incoming bandwidth for each subscriber on the LAN.

With class-based bandwidth allocation, you can set up bandwidth classes in the billing profiles on the VSG or on a RADIUS server.

13.1.2 Activating Bandwidth Management

To activate bandwidth management, click **Advanced Setting**, **Bandwidth** and select the **Bandwidth Management** check box.

Figure 88 Bandwidth Management: Activate

| Bandwidth Management | |
|---|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bandwidth Management | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Equal bandwidth for all subscribers | |
| Maximum Upstream Bandwidth | <input checked="" type="radio"/> 256Kbps <input type="radio"/> 0 Kbps (64-24576) |
| Maximum Downstream Bandwidth | <input checked="" type="radio"/> 256Kbps <input type="radio"/> 0 Kbps (64-24576) |
| <input type="radio"/> Class of service based on RADIUS or billing profile settings | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

16.1.2 Configuring Equal Share Bandwidth Management

To configure the VSG to impose the same bandwidth limits on all subscribers, select **Equal bandwidth for all subscribers** in the **Bandwidth Management** screen and set the related fields.

Figure 89 Bandwidth Management: Equal Share

| Bandwidth Management | |
|---|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bandwidth Management | |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Equal bandwidth for all subscribers | |
| Maximum Upstream Bandwidth | <input checked="" type="radio"/> 256Kbps <input type="radio"/> 0 Kbps (64-24576) |
| Maximum Downstream Bandwidth | <input checked="" type="radio"/> 256Kbps <input type="radio"/> 0 Kbps (64-24576) |
| <input type="radio"/> Class of service based on RADIUS or billing profile settings | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 42 Bandwidth Management: Equal Share

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------|--|
| Maximum Upstream Bandwidth | To use a pre-defined option, select the first option and choose a bandwidth from the drop-down list box. To manually set the bandwidth, select the second option and specify the bandwidth in the field provided. |
| Maximum Downstream Bandwidth | To use a pre-defined option, select the first option and choose a bandwidth from the drop-down list box. To manually set the bandwidth, select the second option and specify the bandwidth in the field provided. |

16.1.3 Configuring Class of Service Bandwidth Management

To set the VSG to impose different bandwidth limits based on the configurations in a RADIUS server or a billing profile, select **Class of service based on RADIUS or Billing profile settings** in the **Bandwidth Management** screen.

You must then set the bandwidth management on a RADIUS server or in a billing profile. Refer to [Chapter 7, “Billing Profiles and PMS Configuration,” on page 79](#) to set the bandwidth limits in a billing profile.

Figure 90 Bandwidth Management: Class of Service

CHAPTER 17

Portal Page, Advertisement Link and Walled Garden

This chapter shows you how to set a portal web site, advertisement links and create walled garden web sites.

17.1 Introduction

When you enable subscriber authentication in the **Authentication Configuration** screen, you can set the VSG to redirect a subscriber to a portal web site, display advertisement links or activate the walled garden feature for generating on-line advertising revenue.

17.2 Portal Page

A portal page is the first web site to which a subscriber is redirected after logging in successfully. If you do not specify a portal web site, the subscriber will be directed to the intended web site specified.

Click **Advanced** and **Portal Page** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 91 Portal Page

| Portal Page | |
|---|----------------------|
| This feature allows to redirect subscriber's browser to a specified portal page after successful login. | |
| URL Link | <input type="text"/> |
| Apply | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Portal Page

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|--|
| URL Link | Enter the web site address of a portal page. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the settings. |

17.3 Advertisement Links

You can set the VSG to display an advertisement web page first on the subscriber's computer once connected to the Internet. Click **Advanced** and **Advertisement** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 92 Advertisement

| Advertisement | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Frequency | <input checked="" type="radio"/> One Time Only <input type="radio"/> Every <input type="text" value="0"/> Min(s) |
| Sequence | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Randomly <input type="radio"/> Orderly (From 1 to 10) |
| Link 1 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 2 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 3 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 4 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 5 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 6 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 7 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 8 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 9 | <input type="text"/> |
| Link 10 | <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 44 Advertisement

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|--|
| Frequency | Select One Time Only to display an advertisement web site in a pop-up browser window once after a subscriber logs in successfully. Select Every ... Min(s) to display an advertisement web site in a pop-up browser window once every time period specified (between 1 and 60 minutes) after a subscriber logs in successfully. |
| Sequence | Select Randomly to display the advertisement web pages in random order. Select In Order to display the advertisement web pages in the order as configured. |
| Link 1 .. 10 | Enter the web site addresses in the fields provided. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

17.4 Walled Garden

A subscriber must log in before the VSG allows the subscriber access to the Internet. However, with walled garden, you can define the web site address(es) which all users can access without logging in.



Note: A walled garden web site may not display properly or even be accessible if the domain name contains multiple IP addresses.

Click **Advanced** and then **Walled Garden** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 93 Walled Garden

| Walled Garden | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Link 1 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 2 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 3 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 4 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 5 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 6 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 7 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 8 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 9 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| Link 10 | Name: <input type="text"/> URL: <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

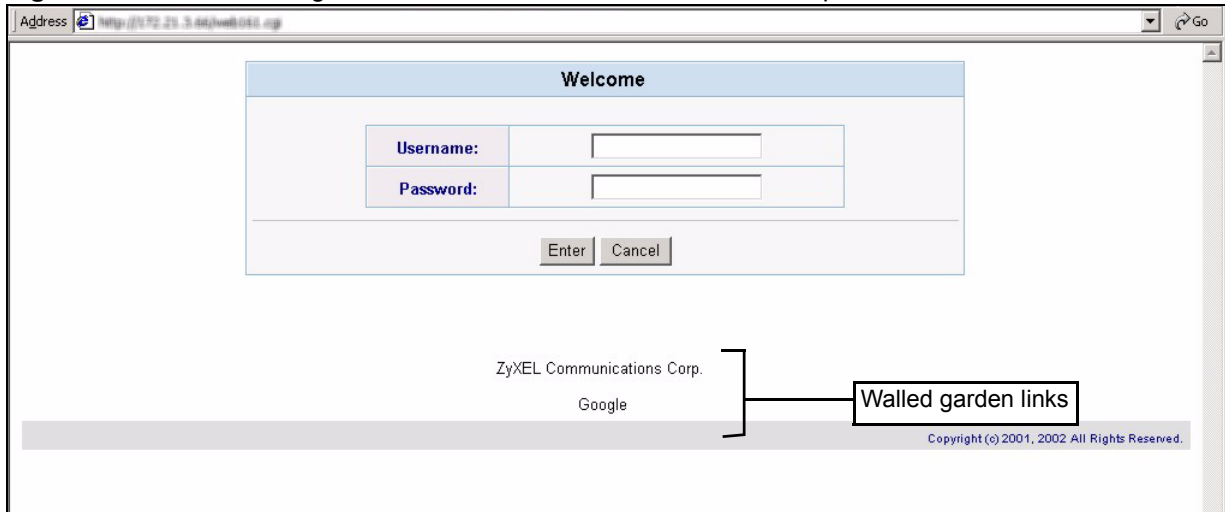
The following table describes the labels to configure the walled garden feature.

Table 45 Walled Garden

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|--|
| Link 1 ... 10 | In the Name field, enter a descriptive name (up to 80 characters) for the walled garden link to be displayed in the web browser. In the URL field, enter the web site address (up to 200 characters) of the web site. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

The following figure shows a subscriber login screen example with walled garden links.

Figure 94 Subscriber Login Screen with Walled Garden Links Example



CHAPTER 18

Passthrough

This chapter shows you how to set up computer and web site passthrough.

18.1 About the Passthrough

There are two types of pass through you can set up on the VSG: by device or by web site address. You can set the VSG to allow specific computers (based on the IP or MAC address) to access the Internet without prompting for a user name and password.

To allow global access to web sites, specify the web site address (by IP address or URL) that any user can access without logging in. This is similar to the walled garden feature, but without displaying the web site link(s) in the subscriber login screen. You have to inform the users about which web sites they can access for free.

18.2 Configuring Passthrough

To configure passthrough on the VSG, click **Advanced** and then **Passthrough**.

18.2.1 Subscriber Computer Passthrough

You can specify the IP or MAC address(es) of a computer that can access the Internet without entering a user name and password. This feature is useful, for example, if you want to set up computers to provide free Internet access in the VIP room or for sponsors in events.

Figure 95 Passthrough: Subscriber IP and MAC Address

| Subscriber IP & MAC Address Passthrough | | | | | |
|---|----------------------|-----|----------------------|-----|----------------------|
| No. | IP Address | No. | IP Address | No. | IP Address |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | 13 | <input type="text"/> | 25 | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | 14 | <input type="text"/> | 26 | <input type="text"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | 15 | <input type="text"/> | 27 | <input type="text"/> |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | 16 | <input type="text"/> | 28 | <input type="text"/> |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | 17 | <input type="text"/> | 29 | <input type="text"/> |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | 18 | <input type="text"/> | 30 | <input type="text"/> |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | 19 | <input type="text"/> | 31 | <input type="text"/> |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | 20 | <input type="text"/> | 32 | <input type="text"/> |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | 21 | <input type="text"/> | 33 | <input type="text"/> |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | 22 | <input type="text"/> | 34 | <input type="text"/> |
| 11 | <input type="text"/> | 23 | <input type="text"/> | 35 | <input type="text"/> |
| 12 | <input type="text"/> | 24 | <input type="text"/> | 36 | <input type="text"/> |
| No. | MAC Address | No. | MAC Address | No. | MAC Address |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | 11 | <input type="text"/> | 21 | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | 12 | <input type="text"/> | 22 | <input type="text"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | 13 | <input type="text"/> | 23 | <input type="text"/> |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | 14 | <input type="text"/> | 24 | <input type="text"/> |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | 15 | <input type="text"/> | 25 | <input type="text"/> |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | 16 | <input type="text"/> | 26 | <input type="text"/> |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | 17 | <input type="text"/> | 27 | <input type="text"/> |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | 18 | <input type="text"/> | 28 | <input type="text"/> |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | 19 | <input type="text"/> | 29 | <input type="text"/> |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | 20 | <input type="text"/> | 30 | <input type="text"/> |

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 46 Passthrough: Subscriber IP and MAC Address

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| Subscriber IP & MAC Address Passthrough | |
| No. | This read-only field displays the index number of an entry. |
| IP Address | Enter the IP address of a computer (in dotted decimal notation) whose packets are allowed to pass through the VSG. For example, 10.59.1.10. |
| MAC Address | Enter the MAC address of a computer (in 6 hexadecimal pairs separated by a hyphen "-", for example, 00-50-BA-8D-22-96) whose packets are allowed to pass through the VSG. |

18.2.2 Destination URL and IP Address Passthrough

You can specify the IP address or the URL of the web site(s) that any user can access without entering a user name or password.

Figure 96 Passthrough: Destination URL and IP

| Destination IP Address Passthrough | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|-----|----------------------|-----|----------------------|
| No. | IP Address | No. | IP Address | No. | IP Address |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | 13 | <input type="text"/> | 25 | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | 14 | <input type="text"/> | 26 | <input type="text"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | 15 | <input type="text"/> | 27 | <input type="text"/> |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | 16 | <input type="text"/> | 28 | <input type="text"/> |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | 17 | <input type="text"/> | 29 | <input type="text"/> |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | 18 | <input type="text"/> | 30 | <input type="text"/> |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | 19 | <input type="text"/> | 31 | <input type="text"/> |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | 20 | <input type="text"/> | 32 | <input type="text"/> |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | 21 | <input type="text"/> | 33 | <input type="text"/> |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | 22 | <input type="text"/> | 34 | <input type="text"/> |
| 11 | <input type="text"/> | 23 | <input type="text"/> | 35 | <input type="text"/> |
| 12 | <input type="text"/> | 24 | <input type="text"/> | 36 | <input type="text"/> |
| Destination URL Passthrough | | | | | |
| No. | URL Link Page | | | | |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | | | | |

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 47 Passthrough: Destination URL and IP

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Destination IP Address Passthrough | |
| No. | This read-only field displays the index number of an entry. |
| IP Address | Enter the IP address of a web site in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.10 |
| Pass Through Destination URL | |
| No. | This read-only field displays the index number of an entry. |
| URL Link Page | Enter the web site address, for example, http://www.zyxel.com. |

CHAPTER 19

LAN Devices

This chapter describes how you can remotely access devices on the LAN through the VSG.

19.1 LAN Devices and NAT Overview

NAT (Network Address Translation - NAT, RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet. For example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network is changed to a different IP address known within another network.

Traditionally, when you have a device (for example, a switch) on a LAN using NAT, you cannot access the device from the WAN since the LAN device is assigned a private IP address.

Your VSG is a NAT-enabled device that makes your whole inside network appear as a single computer to the outside world.

19.1.1 Port Mapping

To make LAN devices behind the VSG visible to the outside world, you configure a mapping between a virtual port on the VSG and a server port on a LAN device. A virtual port is a port on the VSG that appears as a physical port to the attached devices. A server port defines a server to which all specified requests are forwarded.

In addition, centralized LAN device management is possible through the VSG using port mapping. You can access the management interface on the LAN device remotely provided that the LAN device has allowed remote management.

19.2 Configuring LAN Device Port Mapping

Click **Advanced** and **LAN Devices** to display the **LAN Device Management** screen as shown.



Note: You can configure port mapping for up to 300 LAN devices on the VSG.

Figure 97 LAN Devices

| LAN Devices | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|---|---|
| | | | | | | Polling Interval: <input type="text" value="1"/> Min(s) |
| No. | Device Name | Virtual Port (60001~60300) | Device IP Address | Device Server Port | Device MAC Address | Application |
| 1 | <input type="text" value="B-3000"/> | <input type="text" value="60001"/> | <input type="text" value="10.59.1.30"/> | <input type="text" value="80"/> | <input type="text" value="00A0C5000005"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 2 | <input type="text" value="P662HW"/> | <input type="text" value="60002"/> | <input type="text" value="10.59.1.62"/> | <input type="text" value="80"/> | <input type="text" value="00A0C5012345"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 11 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 44 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 45 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 46 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 47 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 48 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 49 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |
| 50 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="0"/> | <input type="text"/> | TCP ▾ |

Notice: The system does not support FTP Delete All

GO Page

 First ◀ ◀ Previous Next ▶ ▶ End

Apply

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 LAN Devices

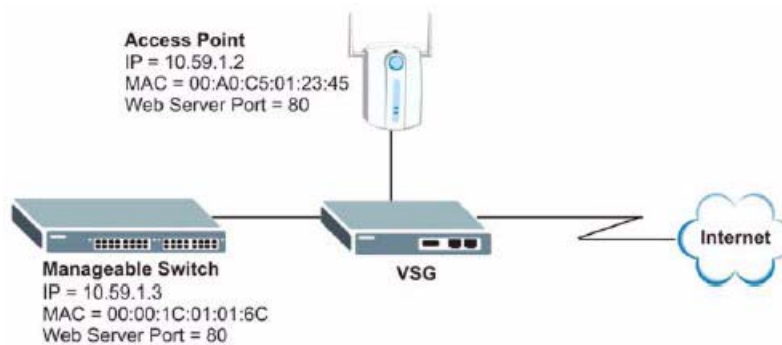
| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Polling Interval | Specify the time interval (in minutes) between the VSG's probes for device availability. |
| No. | This read-only field displays the index number of an entry. |
| Device Name | Enter the name of the LAN device for identification purposes. |
| Virtual Port | Enter a unique port number between 60001 and 60300 to map to the port number in the Server Port field. |

Table 48 LAN Devices (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| Device IP Address | Enter the IP address of a LAN device in dotted decimal notation. For example, 10.59.1.111. |
| Device Server Port | Enter the port number of a management service (for example, 80 for HTTP) on the LAN device. |
| MAC Address | Enter the MAC address of the LAN device in hexadecimal notation in 6 hexadecimal pairs, for example, 0050BA8D2296. Note: Make sure you enter the correct MAC address. |
| Application | Select an application type from the drop-down list box. Choose from TCP or UDP . Only requests for the selected application type are forwarded to the specified server port on the LAN device. |
| Delete | Click Delete All to remove all accounts. Click Delete to remove the selected account. |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

19.2.1 LAN Device Management Example

In this example, there is a manageable switch and a wireless access point behind the VSG and you want to be able to remotely access the web-based management interfaces on the manageable switch and access point over the Internet.

Figure 98 LAN Device Remote Management Example 1

You map virtual port 60001 on the VSG to the web server port on the access point and 60002 to the web server port on the manageable switch.

Figure 99 LAN Devices: Example 1

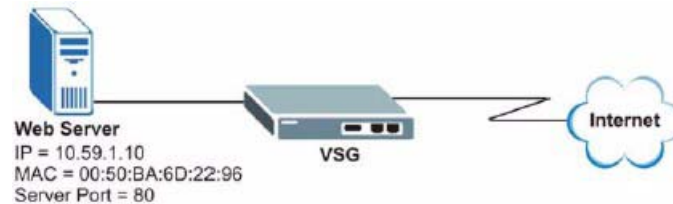
| LAN Devices | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| | | | | | | Polling Interval: <input type="text" value="1"/> Min(s) |
| No. | Device Name | Virtual Port (60001~60300) | Device IP Address | Device Server Port | Device MAC Address | Application |
| 1 | ZyAIR AP | 60001 | 10.59.1.2 | 80 | 00A0C5012345 | TCP |
| 2 | ES-2008 Switch | 60002 | 10.59.1.3 | 80 | 00001C01016C | TCP |
| 3 | | 0 | | 0 | | TCP |

To access the web-based management interface, enter the WAN IP address of your VSG and the virtual port number of the LAN device separated by a colon. In this example, to access the access point (AP), enter “http:// 192.168.1.1:60001” where 192.168.1.1 is the WAN IP address of the VSG. The login screen of the LAN device management interface should display.

You can also access the LAN devices through the VSG web configurator, refer to [Section 24.7.1 “Accessing the LAN Device”](#) on page 184 for more information.

19.2.2 Specifying an Inside Server Example

Let's say you have a web server behind the VSG as shown in the next figure.

Figure 100 LAN Device Remote Management Example 2

In the **LAN Device Management** screen, you map virtual port 60001 to the server port (80) on the web server.

Figure 101 LAN Devices: Example 2

| LAN Devices | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| | | | | | | Polling Interval: <input type="text" value="1"/> Min(s) |
| No. | Device Name | Virtual Port (60001~60300) | Device IP Address | Device Server Port | Device MAC Address | Application |
| 1 | Web Server | 60001 | 10.59.1.10 | 80 | 0050BA6D2296 | TCP |
| 2 | | 0 | | 0 | | TCP |

To access an inside server on the LAN, enter the WAN IP address of your VSG and the virtual port number of the inside server separated by a colon. In this example, to access the web server, enter “http:// 192.168.1.1:9602” where 192.168.1.1 is the WAN IP address of the VSG.

You can also access the server by entering the domain name provided that you specified a DNS server on the VSG. Enter the domain name and the virtual port number separated by a colon, for example, http://www.domainName:60001.

You can also access the LAN devices through the VSG web configurator, refer to [Section 24.7.1 “Accessing the LAN Device” on page 184](#) for more information.

CHAPTER 20

Static Route

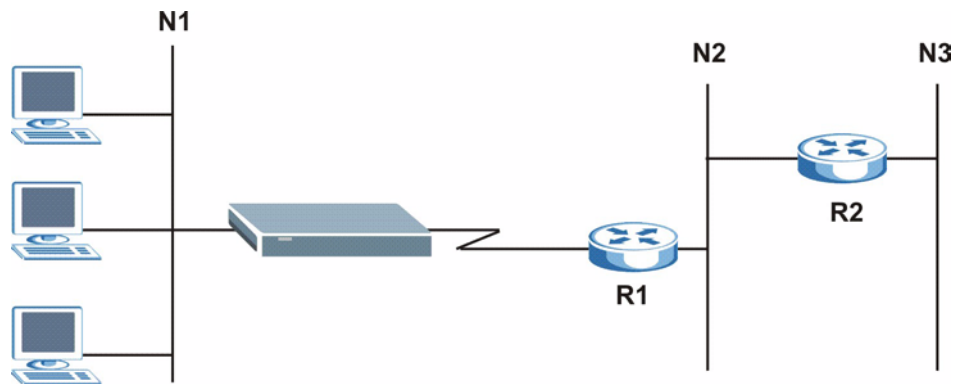
This chapter shows you how to configure static routes to specified destinations.

20.1 Static Route Overview

Static routes tell the VSG routing information that it cannot learn automatically through other means. This can arise in cases where RIP is disabled on the LAN or a remote network is beyond the one that is directly connected to a remote node.

Each remote node specifies only the network to which the gateway is directly connected and the VSG has no knowledge of the networks beyond. For instance, the VSG knows about network N2 in the following figure through remote node Router 1. However, the VSG is unable to route a packet to network N3 because it does not know that there is a route through remote node Router 1 (via Router 2). The static routes allow you to tell the VSG about the networks beyond the remote nodes.

Figure 102 Sample Static Routing Topology



20.2 The Static Route Screen

Configure and view static route settings in the **Static Route** screen.

Click **Advanced** and **Static Route** to display the configuration screen.

Figure 103 Advanced: Static Route

| Static Route | | | | |
|--------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| No. | Destination IP Address | Destination Subnet Mask | Gateway IP Address | Hop Count |
| 1 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| 2 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| 16 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| 17 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| 18 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| 19 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| 20 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> | 1 ▾ |
| | | | | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

| Static Route Table | | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| No. | Destination IP Address | Destination Subnet Mask | Gateway IP Address | Hop Count | Delete |
| | | | | | <input type="button" value="Delete"/> |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 49 Advanced: Static Route

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Static Route | Set the fields below to configure static route settings. You can configure up to 20 static routes at a time. |
| No. | This is the index number of the static route that you chose in menu 12.1. |
| Destination IP Address | This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID. |
| Destination Subnet Mask | Type the subnet mask for this destination. |
| Gateway IP Address | Type the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is a router or switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations. |
| Hop Count | Hop count represents the cost of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Select a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. New static route entries display in the table below. |
| Static Route Table | This table displays the static routes configured. |
| No. | This field displays the index number. |
| Destination IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the final destination. |

Table 49 Advanced: Static Route (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Destination Subnet Mask | This field displays the subnet mask of the final destination. |
| Gateway IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the gateway device. |
| Hop Count | This field displays the “cost” of this static route. |
| Delete | Click Delete to remove the selected static route(s). |

CHAPTER 21

Syslog and Session Trace

This chapter shows you how to configure syslog logging and set the VSG to send subscriber session information.

21.1 Syslog

Syslog logging allows the VSG to send logs to an external syslog server that is used to store and analyze logs.

21.1.1 Syslog Server Setup

Use the **Syslog** screen to configure to where the VSG is to send logs. To configure the syslog settings, click **Advanced**, **Logs** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 104 Logs: Syslog

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Logs: Syslog

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| Syslog Server | Select Enable to activate the syslog function. Select Disable to de-activate the syslog function. |
| Syslog on LAN | Select this check box to specify a syslog server on the LAN. |
| Server IP Address | Enter the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) of the syslog server on the LAN. |
| Server MAC Address | Enter the MAC address of the syslog server on the LAN. |
| Syslog on WAN | Select this check box to specify a syslog server on the WAN. |

Table 50 Logs: Syslog (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------------|---|
| Server 1 IP Address | Enter the IP address of the first syslog server on the WAN in dotted decimal notation. |
| Server 2 IP Address | Enter the IP address of the second syslog server on the WAN in dotted decimal notation. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the settings. |

21.1.2 Configure Log Settings

To specify which logs the VSG is to send and the schedule for when the VSG is to send the logs, click **Advanced**, **Logs** and click the **Log Settings** link.

Figure 105 Logs: Log Settings

| Log Settings | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|---|--------------------------------------|
| System | | | | |
| Syslog | Syslog Name | Description | Interval Time | Type |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | System Information | A log including the system information will be sent according to specified interval time | 60 minutes | 166 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | System Boot Notice | Once system reboots, the log will be sent | When system reboot | 165 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | System Account Activity Information | A log would be sent if system account (Administrator, Supervisor or Account Operator) login to or logout from the device | When system account login or logout. | 166 |
| Accounting | | | | |
| Syslog | Syslog Name | Description | Interval Time | Type |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Account Created | A log will be sent once after an account is created | When an account is created | 166 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Subscriber Trace | A log including subscribers login/logout time will be sent once after subscriber logout | When subscriber logout | 165 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Logged-in Users | A login users information will be sent according to specified interval time | 60 minutes | 166 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | User Agreement | A log would be sent when "user agreement" enabled | When subscriber login | 166 |
| Billing | | | | |
| Syslog | Syslog Name | Description | Interval Time | Type |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Billing Log | A log would be sent according to specified interval time | When log created | 166 |
| LAN Devices Management | | | | |
| Syslog | Syslog Name | Description | Interval Time | Type |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN Devices Information | A log including current LAN Devices Status will be sent according to specified interval time | 60 minutes | 166 164 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | LAN Devices Alarm | A log will be sent if one of the LAN Devices detected result is "Fail" | When device fail | 161 |
| Alert | | | | |
| Syslog | Syslog Name | Description | Interval Time | Type |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Administration access Fail | A log would be sent when someone failed to access the administration web server | When someone failed to access the system web server | 161 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | NAT Pool exhausted(IP/Port) | A log would be sent when IP or Port mapping exhausted | When NAT Pool exhausted | 161 |
| | | | | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 Logs: Log Settings

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|---------------|---|
| Syslog Name | This field displays the name (or type) of the log. Select the check box(es) to send the syslog. |
| Description | This field displays a short description about the syslog. |
| Interval Time | This field displays how often the VSG sends the logs. If available, enter the number of minutes the VSG waits between sending the syslog. |
| Type | This field displays the type number of a log. This number is read-only. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the settings. |

The following table describes the log formats.

Table 52 Logs: Log Format

| SYSLOG NAME | FORMAT | CREATED |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| System Information | Id <MAC Address> System Uptime <0 days 00h:04m:00s> WAN <FrameTxOK FrameRxOK FrameTxError FrameRxError> LAN <FrameTxOK FrameRxOK FrameTxError FrameRxError> | Each time interval specified (between 1 and 10080 minutes). |
| System Boot Notice | Id <MAC Address> System Up | Each time when the device reboots. |
| System Account Activity Information | Id <MAC Address> System Account Activity Information <Username, User IP, Status> Where: Username = Administrator Supervisor Accounting Operator User IP = IP Address Status = Login Logout Idle Time Out | Each time when the system account logs in or logs out. |
| Account Created | Id <Mac Address> Account Create <username, Account usage time, Billing profile information> Where: Username = Single account <username> or Batch account <prefix, from, to, postfix> Billing profile information = index, name | When an account is created. |
| Subscriber Trace | Id <MAC Address> Subscriber Trace <username, user IP, user MAC, interface, login time, logout time, RxData count, TxData count> | When a subscriber logs out. |
| Logged-in Users | Id <MAC Address> Logged-in Users <Number of Logged-in users, Start Number, End Number) (Username, user IP, user MAC, interface, login time, RxData count, TxData count> [additional information] | Each time interval specified. |

Table 52 Logs: Log Format (continued)

| SYSLOG NAME | FORMAT | CREATED |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| Billing Log | Id <Mac Address> Billing Log <Username, Billing profile information, Log time, Usage time, Bill, Charge From> Where: Charge From = PMS Dynamic Billing profile name = Name Log time = MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM:SS Usage time = "x minutes" "Expire when 00:00" Billing profile information = index, name | When a log is created |
| LAN Devices Information | Id <MAC Address> LAN Devices Information <Number of devices, Start Number, End number> Device name <status> [additional information] | Each time interval specified (between 1 and 10080 minutes). |
| LAN Devices Alarm | Id <MAC Address> LAN Device Alarm <Device name, FAIL> | When the VSG cannot connect to an attached LAN device. |
| Administrator access Fail | Id <MAC Address> Administration Access Fail <Fail message, User IP, Username> Where: Fail message = Bad Username/Password Unauthorized IP Exceeded Maximum Login Note: If Fail message = Unauthorized IP and no user name can be obtained, then Username = None . If Fail message = Exceeded Maximum Login , then Username = Administrator Supervisor Accounting Operator | Each time a system login attempt fails. |
| NAT Pool Exhausted (IP/Port) | Id <MAC Address>) NAT Pool Exhausted <Type> where: Type = NAT pool IP address NAT Port number | When no IP address or port is available for additional NAT mapping. |

21.2 Session Trace

You can set the VSG to send session information of subscribers accessing the Internet. The VSG records the session information and stores it temporary. Once the session trace information reaches a maximum of 50 records or the specified time period is reached, the VSG sends the session information to the specified TFTP server.

21.2.1 Configuring Session Trace

To configure the VSG to send subscriber session information, click **Advanced**, **Session Trace** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 106 Advanced: Session Trace

| Session Trace | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Session Trace | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable |
| TFTP Server IP Address | Primary TFTP Server IP Address <input type="text"/> Secondary TFTP Server IP Address <input type="text"/> |
| | Send Session Trace log file every <input type="text" value="10"/> minutes. (5 ~ 1440) <small>(Note: Session Trace log file will be sent also when collected 50 logs)</small> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 53 Advanced: Session Trace

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|--|
| Session Trace | Select Enable to set the VSG to record and send subscriber session information. Select Disable to de-activate this feature. |
| TFTP Server IP Address | Specify the primary and/or secondary TFTP IP address in the Primary TFTP Server IP Address and/or Secondary TFTP IP Address fields. Enter the IP address(es) in dotted decimal notation. For example, 192.168.1.10. Enter the time interval (in minutes between 5 and 1440) the VSG waits before sending the session information to the TFTP server(s). Note: If there are 50 session trace records, the VSG sends the session information to the TFTP server even if the time interval is not up. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the settings. |

21.2.1.1 Session Trace Filename Convention

The subscriber session information is stored a plain text file with a “txt” filename extension. The general structure of the filename is <hostname>DDMMYYHHMMSS.txt. For example, “MIS221004131543.txt” is the file name of a session information file created at 13:15:43 PM on October 22, 2004 on a VSG with a hostname of “MIS”.

You can view the subscriber session trace information using any text editor. The following figure shows an example of the session information file the VSG sends to a TFTP server.

Figure 107 Session Trace Information Example

| Host Name | User Name | Date | VLANId | SourceIP | SourceMac | SourcePort | DestIP | DestPort |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------|-------------|----------|
| MIS | Cindy | 22Oct04130403 | 192.168.1.10 | 192.168.1.10 | 0085A0010104 | 3974 | 192.168.1.1 | 80 |
| MIS | Cindy | 22Oct04130404 | 192.168.1.10 | 192.168.1.10 | 0085A0010104 | 3977 | 172.20.0.63 | 53 |
| MIS | Cindy | 22Oct04130440 | 192.168.1.10 | 192.168.1.10 | 0085A0010104 | 3991 | 172.20.0.27 | 80 |

The following table describes the fields in a session information file.

Table 54 Session Trace File Fields

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|------------|---|
| Host Name | This is the host (or system) name of the VSG. |
| User Name | This is the subscriber account username. This field is empty if you disable authentication in the Authentication screen (see Chapter 6, "Authentication," on page 71 for more information). |
| Date | This is the date and time the VSG creates a session trace record. |
| VLANId | This is the VID of the VLAN to which a subscriber belongs. This field is empty if no VLAN tag is present (see Chapter 10, "Port-Location Mapping," on page 103 for more information). |
| SourceIP | This is the IP address of the subscriber. |
| SourceMac | This is the MAC address of the subscriber's computer. |
| SourcePort | This is the source port number of the subscriber. |
| DestIP | This is the destination IP address the subscriber accesses. |
| DestPort | This is the destination port number for this session. |

CHAPTER 22

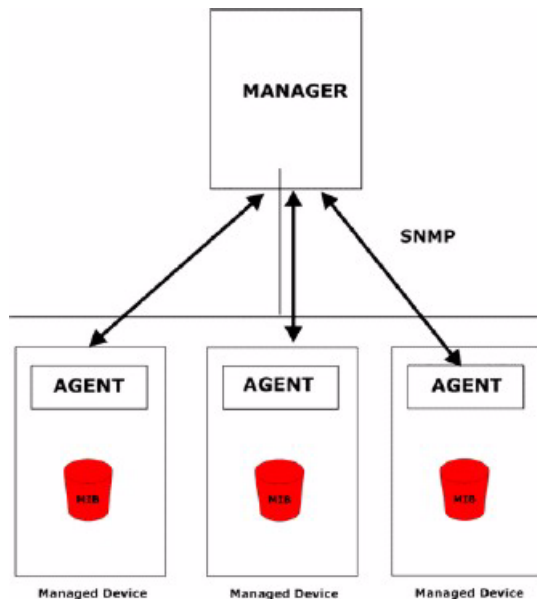
SNMP

This chapter shows you how to set up SNMP.

22.1 SNMP Overview

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is a protocol used for exchanging management information between network devices. SNMP is a member of the TCP/IP protocol suite. Your VSG supports SNMP version one and version 2. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation.

Figure 108 SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed device. An agent translates the local management information from the managed device into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a device. Examples of variables include such as number of packets received, node port status etc. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

- Get - Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
- GetNext - Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
- Set - Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
- Trap - Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

22.1.1 Network Management System (NMS)

An NMS (Network Management System) is a management station that receives traps (the system alerts generated).

If no NMS is defined, then no traps are generated.

22.2 Configuring SNMP

Click **Advanced Setting** and **SNMP** to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 109 SNMP

| SNMP | | | | | |
|---------------|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| SNMP | <input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable | | | | |
| Port | SNMP Port: | <input type="text" value="161"/> | (161 or 16100 ~ 16199) | | |
| | Trap Port: | <input type="text" value="162"/> | (162 or 16200 ~ 16299) | | |
| Configuration | No | Community Name | NMS Address | Privileges | Status |
| | 1 | <input type="text" value="public"/> | <input type="text" value="ANY"/> | <input type="text" value="Read"/> | <input type="text" value="Valid"/> |
| | 2 | <input type="text" value="private"/> | <input type="text" value="ANY"/> | <input type="text" value="Write"/> | <input type="text" value="Valid"/> |
| | 3 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="ANY"/> | <input type="text" value="Read"/> | <input type="text" value="Invalid"/> |
| | 4 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="ANY"/> | <input type="text" value="Read"/> | <input type="text" value="Invalid"/> |
| | 5 | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text" value="ANY"/> | <input type="text" value="Read"/> | <input type="text" value="Invalid"/> |
| | | | | | <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 55 SNMP

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|---|
| SNMP | Select Enable to activate SNMP support. Select Disable to de-activate the SNMP support. |
| Port | |
| SNMP Port | Enter a port number on the VSG for SNMP management. The default is 161 . Otherwise enter a port number between 16100 and 16199. |
| Trap Port | Enter a port number on the VSG for sending SNMP traps. The default is 162 . Otherwise enter a port number between 16200 and 16299. |
| Configuration | |
| No | This read-only field displays the index number of the entry. |
| Community Name | Enter the community string (or the password) of the management station. |
| NMS Address | Enter the IP address of the management station. |
| Privileges | Select a privilege level from the drop-down list box. Options are Read, Write, Trap Recipient and All . |
| Status | Select Valid to activate the selected SNMP configuration entry. Select Invalid to disable the selected SNMP configuration entry. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

CHAPTER 23

MAC Filter

This chapter describes how you can configure the MAC filter feature.

23.1 About the MAC Filter

The **MAC Filter** screen allows you to configure the VSG to block devices from accessing the Internet through the VSG. Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00A0C5000002. You need to know the MAC addresses of the devices to configure this screen.

23.2 Configuring the MAC Filter

To configure the MAC filter, click **Advanced Setting, MAC Filter** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 110 MAC Filter

| MAC Filter | | | | | |
|--|---|-----|----------------------|-----|----------------------|
| Allowing system administrator to block malicious users based on MAC address. | | | | | |
| No. | MAC Address | No. | MAC Address | No. | MAC Address |
| 1 | <input type="text" value="12345678901F"/> | 11 | <input type="text"/> | 21 | <input type="text"/> |
| 2 | <input type="text" value="12345678901D"/> | 12 | <input type="text"/> | 22 | <input type="text"/> |
| 3 | <input type="text"/> | 13 | <input type="text"/> | 23 | <input type="text"/> |
| 4 | <input type="text"/> | 14 | <input type="text"/> | 24 | <input type="text"/> |
| 5 | <input type="text"/> | 15 | <input type="text"/> | 25 | <input type="text"/> |
| 6 | <input type="text"/> | 16 | <input type="text"/> | 26 | <input type="text"/> |
| 7 | <input type="text"/> | 17 | <input type="text"/> | 27 | <input type="text"/> |
| 8 | <input type="text"/> | 18 | <input type="text"/> | 28 | <input type="text"/> |
| 9 | <input type="text"/> | 19 | <input type="text"/> | 29 | <input type="text"/> |
| 10 | <input type="text"/> | 20 | <input type="text"/> | 30 | <input type="text"/> |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 56 MAC Filter

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|--|
| MAC Address | Enter the MAC addresses (in XXXXXXXXXXXX format) of the devices that are denied access to the VSG in these address fields. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

CHAPTER 24

System Status

This chapter describes the screens under **System Status**.

24.1 About System Status

The screens in **System Status** show the current state of the VSG.

24.2 View System Information

Click **System Status** and **System** to display the screen as shown next. The **System** screen automatically updates every 5 seconds.

Figure 111 System Status

| System | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| refresh ↻ | | |
| System Status | Host Name: | |
| | Domain Name: | |
| | Bootrom Version: | 1.01 |
| | Firmware Version: | 1.08 |
| | Concurrent Users Limitation: | 1024 |
| | WAN MAC Address: | 00:A0:C5:41:F0:97 |
| | LAN MAC Address: | 00:A0:C5:41:F0:96 |
| WAN IP Settings | WAN Port Mode: | Use fixed IP address |
| | IP Address: | 192.168.1.1 |
| | Subnet Mask: | 255.255.255.0 |
| | Default IP Gateway: | 192.168.1.254 |
| DNS | Primary DNS Server: | 168.95.1.1 |
| | Secondary DNS Server: | |
| DHCP | DHCP Status | Server |
| | Start IP Address: | 10.59.1.2 |
| | End IP Address: | 10.59.1.254 |
| | Lease Time: | 1440 |
| E-Mail | Server IP Address: | |
| SSL Certificate | Country | 00 |
| | State | Local State |
| | Local City | Local City |
| | Organization | Local Group |
| | Organization Unit | Local Host |
| | Common Name | 1.1.1.1 |
| | Email Address | mail@1.1.1.1 |

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 57 System Status

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|--|
| System Status | |
| Host Name | This field displays the description name of the VSG for identification purposes. |
| Domain Name | This field displays the domain name of the VSG. |
| Bootrom Version | This field displays the version of the bootrom. |
| Firmware Version | This field displays the version of the firmware on the VSG. |

Table 57 System Status (continued)

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|---|
| Concurrent User Limitation | This field displays the maximum number of users that can log in simultaneously for Internet access. |
| WAN MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the VSG on the WAN. |
| LAN MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the VSG on the LAN. |
| WAN IP Settings | |
| WAN Port Mode | This field displays the DHCP mode of the WAN port. |
| IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the WAN port on the VSG. |
| Subnet Mask | This field displays the subnet mask of the WAN port on the VSG. |
| Default IP Gateway | This field displays the IP address of the default gateway of the WAN port on the VSG. |
| DNS | |
| Primary DNS Server | This field displays the IP address of the primary DNS server. |
| Secondary DNS Server | This field displays the IP address of the secondary DNS server. |
| DHCP | |
| DHCP Status | This field displays the DHCP mode (Server , Relay or Disable) on the LAN. |
| Server IP Address | This field is visible when the DHCP Status is Server or Relay . This field displays the IP address of the DHCP server on the network. |
| Start IP Address | This field is visible when the DHCP Status is Server or Relay . This field displays the first of the continuous addresses in the IP address pool. |
| End IP Address | This field is visible when the DHCP Status is Server . This field displays the end of the continuous addresses in the IP address pool. |
| Lease Time | This field is visible when the DHCP Status is Server . This field displays the time (in minutes) a DHCP client is allowed to use an assigned IP address. |
| E-mail | |
| Server IP Address | The field displays the IP address or the domain name of the e-mail server. |
| SSL Certificate | |
| Country | This field displays the two-letter abbreviation of your country. |
| State | This field displays the name of the state or province where your organization is located. |
| Local City | This field displays the name of the city your organization is located. |
| Organization | This field displays the name of your organization. |
| Origination Unit | This field displays additional information about your organization. |
| Common Name | This field displays the fully qualified domain name of your web server. |
| Email Address | This field displays your e-mail address. |

24.3 Current User List

The **Current User List** screen displays a list of subscribers currently logged on to the VSG for Internet access.

Click **System Status** and **Current User List** to display the screen as shown. Click a column heading to sort the entries if applicable. The Username, Billing Profile, Login Time, expiration and Disconnect fields and buttons

Figure 112 Current User List

| Current User List | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------|----------|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------|--------------|-------------------|--------------------------|---|
| refresh ↻ | | | | | | | | | Print List |
| No. | Type | Username | Billing Profile | Login Time | Expiration | IP Address | MAC Address | Disconnect | |
| 1 | Static | Cindy | 1 Profile 1 | 2004/10/22 12:00:28 | 2004/10/23 12:00:28 | 192.168.1.10 | 00:85:A0:01:01:04 | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| | | | | | | | | | Disconnect Disconnect All |
| GO 1 Page | | | | First | | Previous | | Next End | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 Current User List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------|--|
| Refresh | Click Refresh to update this screen. |
| Print List | Click Print List to print the current user list to a printer. No preview option is available. |
| No | This field displays the index number. |
| Type | This field displays the type of subscriber accounts. |
| Username | This displays when you are using authentication. This field displays the username of a subscriber account. |
| Billing Profile | This field displays the number of concurrent access allowed and the name of the billing profile that the subscriber uses. |
| Login Time | This displays when you are using authentication. This field displays the time the subscriber logs in. |
| Expiration | This displays when you are using authentication. This field displays the time this account expires. This field displays N/A when total bandwidth limitation is enforced on this account. Refer to Section 6.1.5.2 "Vendor Specific Attribute" on page 73 and Appendix D, "Vendor Specific Attributes," on page 239 for more information. |
| IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the subscriber's computer. |
| MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the computer that is logged in using this account. |
| Disconnect | This displays when you are using authentication. Select this check box and click Disconnect to log out the selected subscriber. Click Disconnect All to log out all subscribers. |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |

Table 58 Current User List (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------|---|
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |

24.4 DHCP Clients

The DHCP client table shows current DHCP client information of all network clients using the DHCP server on the VSG.

Click **System Status** and **DHCP** to display the screen as shown. The **DHCP Clients** screen automatically updates every 120 seconds.

Figure 113 DHCP Clients

| DHCP Clients | | |
|---|-------------------|------------|
| DHCP Client's Information, including assigned IP address and MAC address. | | |
| No. | MAC Address | IP Address |
| 1 | 00:0F:FE:1E:4A:E0 | 10.59.1.2 |
| <input type="button" value="refresh"/> | | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 59 DHCP Clients


| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|---|
| No. | This field displays the index number of an entry. |
| MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the client computer. The MAC (Media Access Control) or Ethernet address on a LAN (Local Area Network) is unique to your computer (six pairs of hexadecimal characters). A network interface card such as an Ethernet adapter has a hard-wired address that is assigned at the factory. This address follows an industry standard that ensures no other adapter has a similar address. |
| IP Address | This field displays the IP address assigned to the client computer. |
| refresh | Click this button to manually renew the screen's information display. |






24.5 Session List

To display a list of session information, click **System Status** and **Session List**. The **Session List** screen displays up to 2048 entries. When all rows are used, the entries wrap around and the old entries are erased. This screen automatically updates every 5 seconds.

Figure 114 Session List

| Session List | | | | | | | |
|--------------|---------|--------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|------|
| No. | TCP/UDP | IP Client | Port Client | Port Fake | IP Remote | Port Remote | Idle |
| 1 | TCP | 192.168.1.10 | 3129 | 50002 | 192.168.1.1 | 80 | 128 |


 Page

 First
  Previous
 Next 
 End 

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Session List

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------|--|
| No | This field displays the index number of an entry. |
| TCP/UDP | This field displays the type of traffic (TCP or UDP). |
| IP Client | This field displays the IP address of the client computer. |
| Port Client | This field displays the port number through which the client computer transmits the traffic. |
| Port Fake | This field displays the virtual port number for a session. |
| Port Remote | This field displays the port number of a remote device the client computer accesses. |
| Idle | This field displays the number of seconds of inactivity for a session. |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |

24.6 NAT Pool Table

The VSG provides a NAT address pool feature for use with VPN. It allows subscribers to connect to remote VPN servers that allow only one connection per source IP address.

Click **System Status** and **NAT Pool Table** to open the screen shown next. This screen displays the LAN and WAN IP addresses that are currently being used as well the VPN types.

Figure 115 NAT Pool Table

| NAT Pool Table | | | | |
|---|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| NAT Pool information. Source IP address, Source MAC address and Translated IP address | | | | |
| No. | Source IP Address | Source MAC Address | Translated IP Address | VPN Type |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 NAT Pool Table

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| No | This field displays the index number of an entry. |
| Source IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the subscriber device on the LAN that is using the VPN. |
| Source MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the subscriber device on the LAN that is using the VPN. |
| Translated IP Address | This field displays the WAN IP address of the VSG to which the LAN IP address of the subscriber using the VPN was translated. |
| VPN Type | This field displays the type of VPN connection that is being used (IPSec or PPTP). |

24.7 LAN Device Status

The **LAN Devices Status** screen displays the status of LAN devices configured in the **LAN Devices** screen (refer to [Chapter 19, “LAN Devices,”](#) on page 153).

Click **System Status** and **LAN Devices Status** to display the screen as shown next. This screen automatically updates every minute.

Figure 116 System Status: LAN Device Status

| LAN Devices Status | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| No. | Device Name | Status | Virtual Port (60001~60300) | Device IP Address | Device Server Port | Device MAC Address | Application |
| 1 | B-3000 | OK | 60001 | 10.59.1.30 | 80 | 00:A0:C5:00:00:05 | TCP |
| 2 | P662HW | OK | 60002 | 10.59.1.62 | 80 | 00:A0:C5:01:23:45 | TCP |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 System Status: LAN Device Status

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|--|
| No | This field displays the index number. |
| Device Name | This field displays the name of the LAN device. Click the device name to access web-based management interface of the LAN device if the Status field is OK . For more information on accessing a LAN device, refer to Section 24.7.1 “Accessing the LAN Device” on page 184. |
| Status | This field displays the current status of the LAN device. It displays OK when the LAN device is turned on and working properly. Otherwise it displays Fail . |
| Virtual Port | This field displays the virtual port number. |
| Device IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the LAN device. |
| Device Server Port | This field displays the server port number of the LAN device. |

Table 62 System Status: LAN Device Status (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| Device MAC Address | This field displays the MAC address of the LAN device. |
| Application | This field displays the type of application packet that is forwarded to the LAN device. |

24.7.1 Accessing the LAN Device

Before you can access a LAN device behind the VSG, the following requirements must be met.

- The LAN device has a web-based management interface and it is enabled.
- You have set up the virtual port mapping to the LAN device server port in the **LAN Device Management** screen.
- The LAN device status is **OK** in the **LAN Device Status** screen.

There are two methods to access the LAN device: directly or through the web configurator.


- To access the LAN device through the web configurator, open the **LAN Device Status** screen and click the device name. A new Internet browser should display showing the login screen of the LAN device management interface.
- To directly access the LAN device, enter the WAN IP address of your VSG and the virtual port number of the LAN device separated by a colon. For example, enter “http://192.168.1.1:60001” where 192.168.1.1 is the WAN IP address of the VSG. The login screen of the LAN device management interface should display.





24.8 Billing Logs

Click **System Status** and **Billing Log** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Refer to [Section 24.8.1 “Billing Logs Backup” on page 185](#) for information on backing up the billing logs to a computer.

Figure 117 System Status: Billing Log

| Billing Log | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------|------------|-------|-------------|-----------|
| refresh ↻ | | Export to Txt File | | | | | Clear Log |
| No. | Username/Location | Billing Profile | Log Time | Usage Time | Bill | Charge from | Status |
| 1 | bwh2y936 | Profile 1 | 2004/10/21 11:53:06 | 1 day(s) | 10.00 | Dynamic | Expired |
| 2 | Cindy | Profile 1 | 2004/10/22 12:00:28 | 1 day(s) | 10.00 | Static | In-Use |
| 3 | Cindy | Profile 1 | 2004/10/22 13:03:59 | 1 day(s) | 10.00 | Static | Finished |
| 4 | 9v269m55 | Profile 1 | 2004/10/28 11:29:55 | 1 day(s) | 10.00 | Dynamic | Un-used |
| 5 | bwh2y943 | Profile 1 | 2004/10/28 14:11:43 | 2 day(s) | 20.00 | Dynamic | Un-used |


 Page

 First
  Previous
  Next
  End

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 63 System Status: Billing Log

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|---|
| Refresh | Click Refresh to update the screen. |
| Export to Txt File | Click Export to File to back the billing logs. Refer to Section 24.8.1 "Billing Logs Backup" on page 185 for instructions. |
| Clear Log | Click Clear Log to clear all log entries. |
| No | This field displays the index number of the entry. |
| Username/ Location | This field displays the user name or the room number (for Dynamic , PMS or Static accounts only). |
| Billing Profile | This field displays the name of the billing profile an account is using. |
| Log Time | This field displays the time the subscriber logged in using the account. |
| Usage Time | This field displays the time period allocated for an account. |
| Bill | This field displays the amount of money charged for the time unit(s) purchased. |
| Charge from | This field displays the type of the account billing (Accounting , Dynamic or PMS). |
| GO .. Page | Select a page number from the drop-down list box to display the selected page. |
| First | Click First to go to the first page. |
| Previous | Click Previous to return to the previous page. |
| Next | Click Next to go to the next page. |
| End | Click End to go to the last page. |

24.8.1 Billing Logs Backup

Follow the steps below to back up billing logs to a computer.

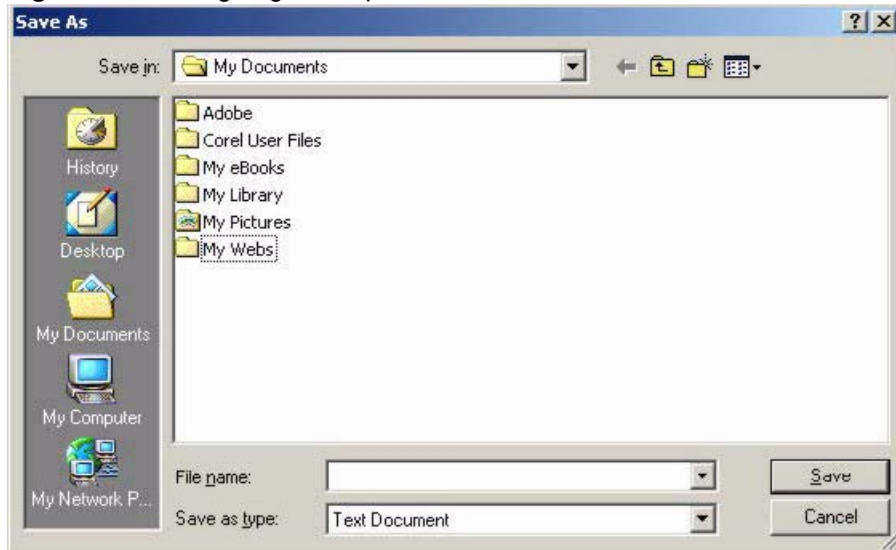
- 1 In the **Billing Log** screen, click the **Export to Txt File** link. A **File Download** screen displays.

Figure 118 Billing Log Backup: File Download



- 2 Select **Save this file to disk** and click **OK**. A **Save As** window displays.

Figure 119 Billing Log Backup: Save As



- 3 Specify the file name and/or location and click **Save** to start the backup process.

To view the billing logs, open the log file using any text editor. The following figure shows an example.

Figure 120 Billing Log Backup: Example File Content

```
[Billing Log Profile]
NO. Username/Location BillingProfile Log Time Usage Time Bill Charge from Status
1   Cindy Profile 1 2004/10/22 12:00:28 1 day(s) 10.00 Static In-Use
2   Cindy Profile 1 2004/10/22 13:03:59 1 day(s) 10.00 Static In-Use
3   bwh2y936 Profile 1 2004/10/21 11:53:06 1 day(s) 10.00 Dynamic Expired
```

24.9 PMS Transaction

This screen is applicable when account billing is done using a PMS.

To display transaction messages between the VSG and PMS, click **System Status** and **PMS Transaction**.

Figure 121 System Status: PMS Transaction Log

24.10 Static Route Table

You can view the list of static routes configured in the **Static Route Table** screen.

Click **System Status** and **Static Routing Table** to display the screen.

Figure 122 System Status: Static Route Table

| Static Route Table | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| No. | Destination IP Address | Destination Subnet Mask | Gateway IP Address | Hop Count |
| 1 | 1.1.1.1 | 255.255.255.0 | 1.1.12.1 | 1 |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 64 System Status: Static Route Table

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------------------------|---|
| Static Route Table | This table displays the static routes configured. |
| No. | This field displays the index number. |
| Destination IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the final destination. |
| Destination Subnet Mask | This field displays the subnet mask of the final destination. |
| Gateway IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the gateway device. |
| Hop Count | This field displays the "cost" of this static route. |

CHAPTER 25

Secure Socket Layer

This chapter shows you how to setup and enable Secure Socket Layer (SSL) security on the VSG.

25.1 About SSL

SSL (Secure Socket Layer) security is a standard Internet protocol for secure communications that uses a combination of certificate-based authentication and public-key encryption. SSL protects data transfer between the web configurator on the VSG and the web browser on a connected computer.

With SSL security activated, data (such as user name and password) transferred between the VSG and the computer is protected when you access the VSG using a web browser that supports SSL.

25.1.1 Certificate

A digital certificate (also referred to as a certificate) contains the key owner's name and public key, the name of the issuing certification authority, the certification authority's digital signature and a certificate validity time limit and other optional information fields.

25.1.2 Certificate Authorities

A Certification Authority (CA) issues digital certificates and guarantees the identity of the certificate owner. When someone requests a certificate from a CA, the CA requires proof of identity. There are both commercial certificate authorities like CyberTrust and VeriSign, as well as government certificate authorities.

25.2 Downloading SSL Certificate to the VSG

After you apply for and receive a certificate from a certificate authority, import the certificate and the private key to the VSG.

Click **System Tools** and **SSL Certificate** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 123 SSL Certificate Download

| SSL Certificate Download | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Password: | <input type="text"/> |
| Certificate File: | <input type="text"/> Browse... |
| Private Key File: | <input type="text"/> Browse... |
| Apply | |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 65 SSL Certificate Download

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------|---|
| Password | Enter the secret password you used when applying for the certificate. Note: This password must be the same as the one you entered at the CA's site when creating a certificate. |
| Certificate File | Specify the certificate sent to you by a CA. |
| Private Key File | Specify the file that holds the private key. |
| Apply | Click Apply to start the file transfer process. |

25.3 Activating SSL Security

Follow the steps below to activate the SSL security in the VSG.

- 1 Click **System Setting, Servers** in the navigation panel and select the **SSL Security** check box in the **Web Server** field.

Figure 124 System Setting: Server Configuration: Enable SSL Security

| Server | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Web Server | Server Port: <input type="text" value="80"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSL Security Administrator Idle-Timeout: <input type="text" value="5"/> Min(s) (1 - 1440) |
| DHCP Server | <input type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> DHCP Relay <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> DHCP Server IP Address <input type="text"/> </div> <input checked="" type="radio"/> DHCP Server <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> IP Pool Starting Address <input type="text" value="10.59.1.2"/> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Pool Size: <input type="text" value="253"/> (Max.=1024) </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Lease Time <input type="text" value="1440"/> (Minutes) </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> Primary DNS Server <input type="text" value="168.95.1.1"/> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"> Secondary DNS Server <input type="text"/> </div> |
| Email Server Redirect | IP Address or Domain Name <input type="text"/> SMTP Port <input type="text" value="25"/> (25, 2500 - 2599) |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

- 2** Click **Apply** to save the changes and restart the VSG when prompted.
- 3** Click **Authentication** in the **Configuration Menu** panel and select **Enable** in the **SSL Login Security** field

Figure 125 System Setting: Authentication: Activate SSL Login

| Authentication Configuration | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|---|-----------------------|--|-------------------------|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Authentication Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> No Authentication <input type="radio"/> User Agreement <input type="radio"/> Redirect URL Link <input type="text"/> Code <input checked="" type="radio"/> Standard User Agreement page <input type="radio"/> CAS (Hiton HSIA) Gateway Type: <input type="text" value="GEN"/> Property Code: <input type="text"/> (5 characters) Property ZIP: <input type="text"/> (4 ~ 10 characters) Redirect URL Link: <input type="text" value="http://hsia.hamptoninn.com/hsia/servlet/Auth"/> <input type="radio"/> Built-in Authentication <p>Three pre-configured options are provided for easy setup. Select an option that best suits your network needs. You must then proceed to configure the "Billing" and "Accounting" settings to complete your setup.</p> <p>Current preset option: Scenario C Select option</p> <input type="radio"/> RADIUS <table border="1"> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="radio"/> Accumulation</td> <td><input type="radio"/> Time to Finish (No idle timeout)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Primary RADIUS Server</td> <td> Server IP address: <input type="text"/> Authentication Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Accounting Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Shared Secret: <input type="text"/> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Secondary RADIUS Server</td> <td> Server IP address: <input type="text"/> Authentication Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Accounting Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Shared Secret: <input type="text"/> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Retry Attempts when Primary failed</td> <td><input type="text" value="5"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Accounting Service</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable Update every: <input type="text" value="0"/> Min(s) </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Authentication Method</td> <td><input type="text" value="CHAP"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Vendor Specific Attribute</td> <td> Vendor Code: <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Send VSA together with Authentication Request </td> </tr> </table> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Accumulation | <input type="radio"/> Time to Finish (No idle timeout) | Primary RADIUS Server | Server IP address: <input type="text"/> Authentication Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Accounting Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Shared Secret: <input type="text"/> | Secondary RADIUS Server | Server IP address: <input type="text"/> Authentication Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Accounting Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Shared Secret: <input type="text"/> | Retry Attempts when Primary failed | <input type="text" value="5"/> | Accounting Service | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable Update every: <input type="text" value="0"/> Min(s) | Authentication Method | <input type="text" value="CHAP"/> | Vendor Specific Attribute | Vendor Code: <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Send VSA together with Authentication Request |
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Accumulation | <input type="radio"/> Time to Finish (No idle timeout) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Primary RADIUS Server | Server IP address: <input type="text"/> Authentication Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Accounting Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Shared Secret: <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Secondary RADIUS Server | Server IP address: <input type="text"/> Authentication Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Accounting Port: <input type="text" value="0"/> Shared Secret: <input type="text"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Retry Attempts when Primary failed | <input type="text" value="5"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Accounting Service | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable Update every: <input type="text" value="0"/> Min(s) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Authentication Method | <input type="text" value="CHAP"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Vendor Specific Attribute | Vendor Code: <input type="text" value="0"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Send VSA together with Authentication Request | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Idle Time Out | <input type="text" value="5"/> Min(s) (1 - 1440) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Current User Information Backup | <input type="text" value="10"/> Min(s) (1 - 1440) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SSL Login Security | <input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

4 Click **Apply** to save the changes and restart the VSG when prompted.

25.4 Installing SSL Certificate on a Computer

After you enable and activate the SSL login security on the VSG, you can access the VSG through a secure connection.

Follow the steps below to view and install the default SSL security certificate on a computer.

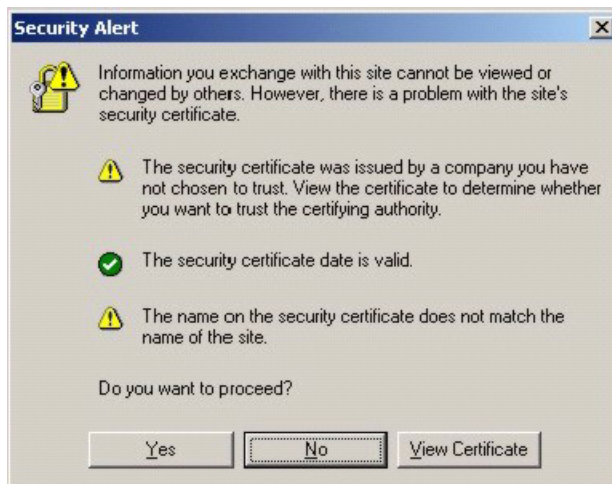
- 1 Access the VSG. A **Security Alert** window displays. Click **OK** to continue and close the window.

Figure 126 Installing the SSL Security Certificate: First Security Alert



- 2 A second **Security Alert** window displays.

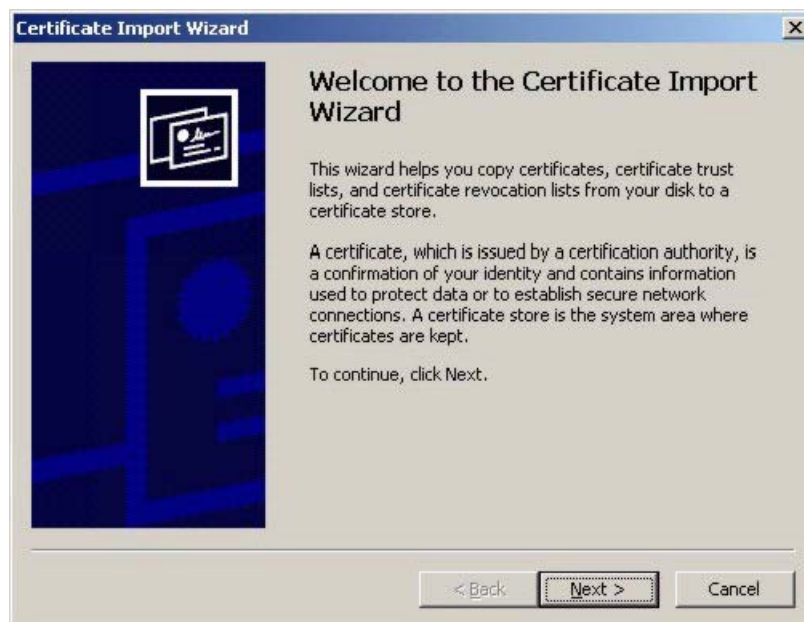
Figure 127 Installing the SSL Security Certificate: Second Security Alert



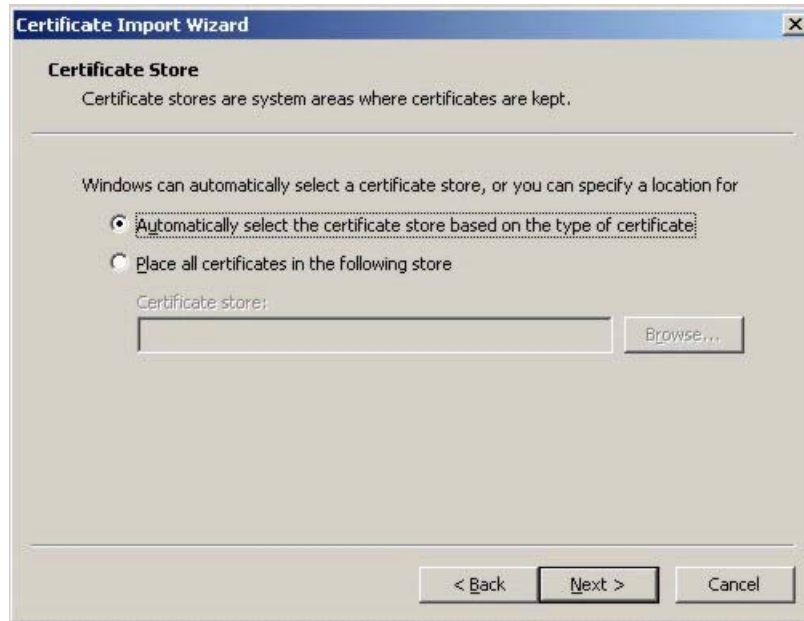
- 3 Click **View Certificate** to display the **Certificate** window as shown. Notice the warning about the untrusted certificate.

Figure 128 Installing the SSL Security Certificate: View Certificate

- 4 Click **Install Certificate** to install the certificate to your computer. A **Certificate Import Wizard** window displays. Click **Next**.

Figure 129 Installing the SSL Security Certificate: Certificate Import Wizard

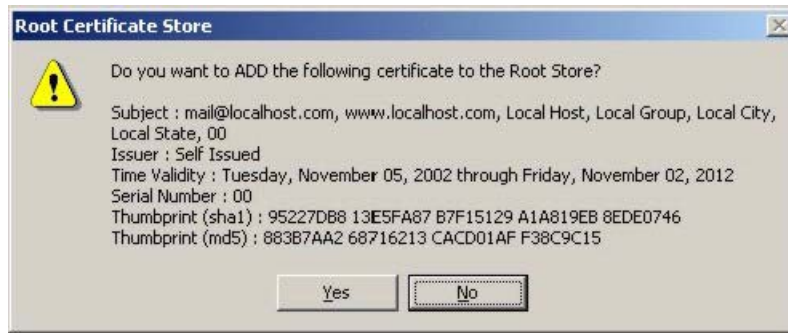
- 5 Accept the default or specify the location to store the certificate. Click **Next**.

Figure 130 Certificate Import Wizard: Location

6 Click **Finish** to import the certificate.

Figure 131 Certificate Import Wizard: Finish

7 A **Root Certificate Store** window displays as shown. Click **Yes** to store the certificate to the computer.

Figure 132 Root Certificate Store

- 8 When the certificate is saved successfully, a **Certificate Import Wizard** window displays. Click **OK**.

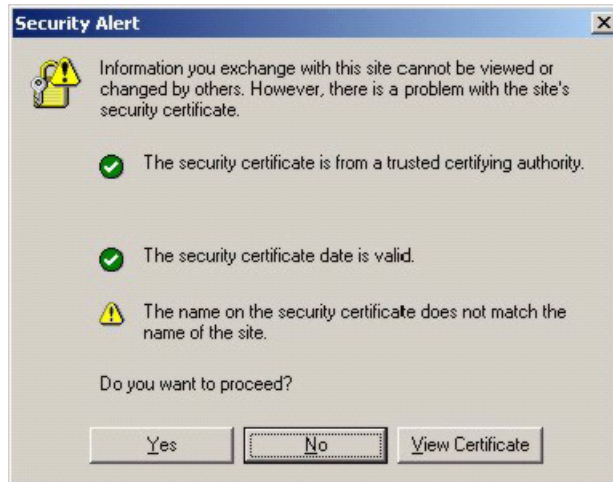
Figure 133 Certificate Import Wizard

- 9 A **Certificate** window displays the detailed information. Notice that the certificate is now trusted.

Figure 134 Certificate: Detailed Information

10 Click **OK** in the **Certificate** window to return to the **Security Alert** window as shown. Notice that the first item in the list changed to inform you that the certificate is from a trusted host. Click **Yes** to proceed to the login screen in secure mode.

Figure 135 Security Alert: Trusted



Note: Once you are logged in with SSL security, the URL starts with “https://” instead of “http://”.

CHAPTER 26

The SMT

This chapter introduces the SMT (System Management Terminal), describes how to access the SMT and provides an overview of its menus.

26.1 Introduction to the SMT

The System Management Terminal (SMT) is a menu – driven interface that you use to configure the VSG. Access the SMT using the console port.



Note: You can connect the CONSOLE port on the VSG directly to a computer serial port or to a statement printer (also known as an account generator printer).

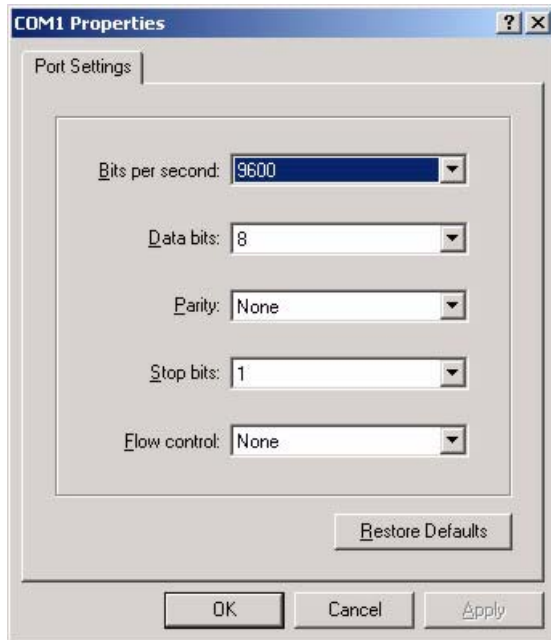
Note: Make sure the CONSOLE port is set to the correct mode. Refer to [Chapter 3, “The Web Configurator,” on page 41](#) on system settings using the web configurator.

Use the SMT to set general system settings and upgrade firmware. For advanced configuration, use the embedded web configurator (refer to the corresponding chapters on configuration using the web configuration).

26.1.1 Establishing a Console Port Connection

After the VSG is directly connected to a computer using the console port, turn on the computer and run a terminal emulation program (for example, Hyper Terminal in Windows) and configure its communication parameters as follows:

- 9600 bits per second.
- Parity none
- 8 data bits
- 1 stop bit
- flow-control none.

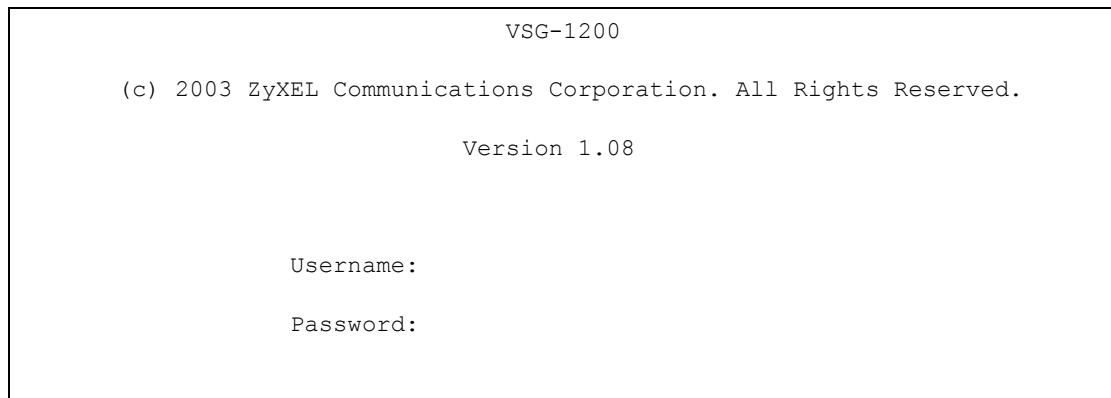
Figure 136 HyperTerminal Communication Parameter Settings Example

26.2 SMT Login Screen

Press [ENTER] to display the login screen. For your first login, enter the default administrator user name "admin" and default password "1234" and then press [ENTER].



Note: The user name and password are case sensitive.

Figure 137 SMT: Login Screen

Note: The VSG automatically logs you out after five minutes of inactivity. Simply log back into the VSG if this happens.

26.3 The SMT Main Menu Summary

The SMT main menu is shown next.

Figure 138 SMT: Main Menu

```

Main Menu

1)System Configuration
2)Wan Configuration
3)Lan Configuration
4)System Status
5)Utilities
6)Restart
7)Logout
8)Factory Defaults

Enter selection:

Enter a numeric between 1 and 8.

```

The following table describes the menu choices in this screen.

Table 66 SMT: Main Menu

| NUMBER | MENU TITLE | FUNCTION |
|--------|----------------------|---|
| 1 | System Configuration | Use this menu to set up general system setup. |
| 2 | WAN Configuration | Use this menu to configure the WAN port. |
| 3 | LAN Configuration | Use this menu to configure the LAN port. |
| 4 | System Status | Use this menu to view the current configuration of the VSG. |
| 5 | Utilities | Use this menu to perform firmware upgrades and change the login password. |
| 6 | Restart | Use this menu to restart your VSG. |
| 7 | Logout | Use this menu to log out of the SMT. |
| 8 | Factory Defaults | Use this menu to reset the VSG back to the factory default settings. |

26.4 Navigating the SMT Interface

Familiarize yourself with the SMT operations before you attempt to modify the configuration.

26.4.1 The Navigation Keys

The following table describes the keystrokes that you use in the SMT screens.

Table 67 SMT: Control Key Descriptions

| KEY | DESCRIPTION |
|---------|--|
| [ENTER] | To go to the selected menu. |
| [ESC] | Press [ESC] and enter Y to discard any changes and return to the previous screen. |
| [TAB] | To move to the next configuration field. |
| [SPACE] | To toggle between field choices. |

26.5 General System Setup

The **System Configuration** menu contains administrative and system-related information.

From the **Main Menu** screen, type 1 and press [ENTER] to display the **System Configuration** menu as shown below.

Figure 139 SMT: System Configuration

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| | System Configuration |
| System Name | : |
| Doamin Name | : |
| Console Port Speed | :9600 |
| Web Server Port | :80 |
| E-Mail Server Redirect | : |

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 68 SMT: System Configuration

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------------|---|
| System Name | Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 characters) for identification purposes. |
| Domain Name | Enter the domain name (if you know it) here. If you leave this field blank, the VSG may obtain a domain name from a DHCP server. The domain name you entered is given priority over the DHCP server assigned domain name. |
| Console Port Speed | Enter 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 14400, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200 to set the console port speed. The default setting is 9600. Note: If you change the console port speed, make sure you also make the same change to the terminal emulator software. |

Table 68 SMT: System Configuration (continued)

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| Web Server Port | Specify the port number of the embedded web server on the VSG to access the web configurator. The default port number is 80. Enter a number between 8010 and 8060 to access the web configurator behind a NAT-enabled network. If you enter a number between 8010 and 8060, you need to append the port number to the WAN or LAN port IP address to access the web configurator. For example, if you enter "8010" as the web server port number, then you must enter "http://www.192.168.1.1:8010" where 192.168.1.1 is the WAN or LAN port IP address. |
| E-mail Server Redirect | Enter the IP address or domain name of the e-mail server to which the VSG forwards e-mail. This field should be configured if the e-mail server is behind a firewall or on a NAT-enabled network. |
| At the "(S)ave and return R)eturn without saving M)odify:" prompt, type S and press [ENTER] to save the changes and return to the previous screen, type R and press [ENTER] to discard all changes and return to the previous screen or type M and press [ENTER] to continue configuring the fields. Restart the device when prompted Press [ESC] and enter Y to stop any actions in the current screen and return to the previous screen. All changes will be discarded. | |

26.6 Changing the System Password



Note: It is recommended you change the default system password.

Follow the steps below to change the system password.

- 1 In the main menu, type 5 and press [ENTER] to display the **Utilities** menu.
- 2 In the **Utilities** menu, type 2 and press [ENTER]. The **Change Administrator Password** menu displays.

Figure 140 SMT: Change Administrator Password

```

Change Administrator Password

Enter the old password :

Enter the new password :

Confirm the new password:

```

- 3 Type your current system password in the **Enter the old password** field, and press [ENTER].

- 4 Type your new system password in the **Enter the new password** field, and press [ENTER].
- 5 Re-type your new system password in the **Confirm the new password** field for confirmation and press [ENTER].
- 6 Save the settings.



Note: Note that as you type a password, the screen displays an asterisk "*" for each character you type.

26.7 Restarting the VSG

Follow the steps below to restart the VSG.

- 1 In the main menu, type 6 and press [ENTER]. A screen displays prompting you to confirm.

Figure 141 SMT: Restart

```
Restart System (Y/N)?
```

- 2 Type Y and press [ENTER] to restart the VSG. Otherwise, type N and press [ENTER] to cancel the action and return to the main menu.

26.8 Reset the VSG to Factory Defaults

If you forgot your administrator login user name and password, you have to use the **RESET** button to reset the VSG back to the factory defaults. Refer to [Chapter 2, "Hardware Installation and Connection," on page 35](#).

Resetting the VSG restores all system configuration back to the factory defaults. However, you may retain the subscriber account information.



Note: All system settings will be lost once you reset to the default settings.
Note: Press [ESC] to return to the Main Menu screen.

Follow the steps below to reset the VSG back to the factory defaults.

- 1 In the main menu, type 8 and press [ENTER]. A screen displays prompting you to confirm.
- 2 Type Y and press [ENTER] to reset the VSG.

- 3** Type **Y** and press **[ENTER]** to retain the subscriber account information in the local subscriber database. Type **N** and press **[ENTER]** to delete all subscriber account information.
- 4** Press **[ENTER]** to reset the VSG. The VSG automatically restarts.

Figure 142 SMT: Reset to Factory Defaults

Change to factory defaults and the system will be restarted!
Are you sure(Y/N)?

CHAPTER 27

LAN and WAN Setup Using the SMT

This chapter shows you how to configure the LAN and WAN settings on the VSG.

27.1 LAN and WAN Overview

Refer to [Chapter 4, “LAN, WAN and Server Setup,”](#) on page 53 for more information.

27.2 WAN Configuration

From the main menu, type 1 and press [ENTER] to display the **System Configuration** menu. The **WAN Configuration** menu varies depending on the selection in the **WAN Type** field.

27.2.1 Using a Static/Dynamic WAN IP Address

You can set the VSG to use a static (fixed) or dynamic IP address.

Figure 143 SMT: WAN Configuration: Static or Dynamic IP Address

| | WAN Configuration |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | :S |
| IP Address | :192.168.1.1 |
| Subnet Mask | :255.255.255.0 |
| Gateway | :192.168.1.254 |
| Primary DNS Server | :168.95.1.1 |
| Secondary DNS Server | : |

The follow table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 69 SMT: WAN Configuration: Static or Dynamic IP Address

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | Enter D (Dynamic) to set the VSG to dynamically obtain an IP address and other network information (IP address, DNS information etc.) from a DHCP server on the WAN network. This is the default setting. Enter S (Static) to set the VSG to use a static (or fixed) IP address. Then set the following fields. |
| IP Address | This field is available when you select S in the WAN Mode field. Enter the static IP address assigned to you by your ISP or network administrator. |
| Subnet Mask | This field is available when you select D in the WAN Mode field. Enter the subnet mask depending on your network needs. The default is 255.255.255.0 . Refer to Appendix H, "IP Subnetting," on page 265 if you are implementing subnetting. |
| Default Gateway | Enter the IP address of the default gateway. |
| Primary/Secondary DNS IP Address | Enter the IP address of the DNS server(s) in the Primary DNS IP Address and/or Secondary DNS IP Address fields. The default primary DNS server IP address is 168.95.1.1 . You <i>must</i> specify a DNS server if you set the VSG to use a static WAN IP address. |
| At the "(S)ave and return R)eturn without saving M)odify:" prompt, type S and press [ENTER] to save the changes and return to the previous screen, type R and press [ENTER] to discard all changes and return to the previous screen or type M and press [ENTER] to continue configuring the fields. Restart the device when prompted Press [ESC] and enter Y to stop any actions in the current screen and return to the previous screen. All changes will be discarded. | |

27.2.2 PPPoE Support

To activate PPPoE support on the VSG, enter **P** in the **WAN Type** field to display the **WAN Configuration** screen as shown next. Refer to the related web configurator section for background information.

Figure 144 SMT: WAN Configuration: PPPoE

| | |
|------------------------|-------|
| WAN Configuration | |
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | :P |
| Username | : |
| Password | : |
| Connect Setting? (C/K) | :C |
| Max idle Time (Min) | :10 |
| Optional Setting | |
| Service name | : |
| PPP MTU Setting | :1492 |
| TCP MSS setting | :1452 |

The following table describes the PPPoE related fields in this menu.

Table 70 SMT: WAN Configuration: PPPoE

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | Enter P to enable PPPoE support. |
| Username | Enter the login user name assigned to you by your ISP. |
| Password | Enter the password associated with the user name above. |
| Connect Setting? (C/K) | Enter C (Connect on demand) when you don't want the connection up all the time and specify an idle time-out in the Max. Idle Timeout Setting field. This is the default selection. Enter K (Keep alive) when you want your connection up all the time and specify the redial time in the Redial Period field to set how long the VSG waits before trying to bring up the connection automatically if it is disconnected. |
| Redial Period (Sec) | The field is only visible when you select K in the Connect Setting field. Type the time in seconds that elapses before the VSG automatically attempts to reconnect to the PPPoE server. The default is 30 seconds. |
| Max Idle Time (Min) | This field is only visible when you select C in the Connect Setting field. Type the time in minutes that elapses before the VSG automatically disconnects from the PPPoE server. The default is 10 minutes. |
| Optional Setting | |
| Service Name | Enter the name of your Internet service provider. |
| PPP MTU Setting | Enter the size of a Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). |
| TCP MSS Setting | Enter the size of the Maximum Segment Size (MSS). |
| At the "(S)ave and return R)eturn without saving M)odify:" prompt, type S and press [ENTER] to save the changes and return to the previous screen, type R and press [ENTER] to discard all changes and return to the previous screen or type M and press [ENTER] to continue configuring the fields. Restart the device when prompted Press [ESC] and enter Y to stop any actions in the current screen and return to the previous screen. All changes will be discarded. | |

27.2.3 PPTP Support

To activate PPTP support on the VSG, enter **T** in the **WAN Type** field to display the **WAN Configuration** screen as shown next. Refer to the related web configurator section for background information.

Figure 145 SMT: WAN Configuration: PPTP

| WAN Configuration | |
|------------------------|-------|
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | :T |
| Local IP Address | : |
| Local Subnet Mask | : |
| Gateway IP Address | : |
| Server IP Address | : |
| Username | : |
| Password | : |
| Connect Setting? (C/K) | :C |
| Max idle Time (Min) | :10 |
| Optional Setting | |
| Connection ID/Name | : |
| PPP MTU Setting | :1460 |
| TCP MSS setting | :1400 |

The following table describes the PPTP-related fields in this menu.

Table 71 SMT: WAN Configuration: PPTP

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|------------------------|---|
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | Enter T to enable PPTP support. |
| Local IP Address | Enter the (static) IP address assigned to you by your ISP for the WAN interface. |
| Local Subnet Mask | Enter the subnet mask assigned to you by your ISP (if given) for the WAN interface. |
| Gateway IP Address | Type the IP address of the gateway device (if given). |
| Server IP Address | Enter the IP address of the PPTP server. |
| Username | Enter the login user name assigned to you by your ISP. |
| Password | Enter the password associated with the user name above. |
| Connect Setting? (C/K) | Enter C (Connect on demand) when you don't want the connection up all the time and specify an idle time-out in the Max. Idle Timeout Setting field. This is the default selection. Enter K (Keep alive) when you want your connection up all the time and specify the redial time in the Redial Period field to set how long the VSG waits before trying to bring up the connection automatically if it is disconnected. |
| Redial Period (Sec) | The field is only visible when you select K in the Connect Setting field. Type the time in seconds that elapses before the VSG automatically attempts to reconnect to the PPTP server. The default is 30 seconds. |
| Max Idle Time Setting | This field is only visible when you select C in the Connect Setting field. Type the time in minutes that elapses before the VSG automatically disconnects from the PPTP server. The default is 10 minutes. |
| Optional Setting | |
| Connection ID/Name | If your ISP has provided a connection ID name, enter it in this field exactly as provided. |
| PPP MTU Setting | Enter the size of a Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). |

Table 71 SMT: WAN Configuration: PPTP (continued)

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|
| TCP MSS Setting | Enter the size of the Maximum Segment Size (MSS). |
| <p>At the "(S)ave and return R)eturn without saving M)odify:" prompt, type S and press [ENTER] to save the changes and return to the previous screen, type R and press [ENTER] to discard all changes and return to the previous screen or type M and press [ENTER] to continue configuring the fields. Restart the device when prompted</p> <p>Press [ESC] and enter Y to stop any actions in the current screen and return to the previous screen. All changes will be discarded.</p> | |

27.3 LAN Configuration

From the **Main Menu** screen, enter 3 to display the **LAN Configuration** menu as shown next.

Figure 146 SMT: LAN Configuration

| LAN Configuration | |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| DHCP Configuration | |
| DHCP Service? (D/R/S) | :S |
| Start IP Address (Private) | :10.59.1.2 |
| DHCP Pool Size (Private) | :20 |
| Lease Time (Private) | :1440 |
| Primary DNS IP Address | :168.95.1.1 |
| Secondary DNS IP Address | : |

The following table describes the fields in this menu.

Table 72 SMT: LAN Configuration

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|-----------------------|--|
| DHCP Service? (D/R/S) | <p>Enter D (Disable) to deactivate DHCP services on the LAN. Ethernet devices connected to the LAN interface <i>must</i> use static IP addresses.</p> <p>Enter R (Relay) to set the VSG to forward network configuration requests to a DHCP server on the LAN network. Then configure the Server IP Address and Agent IP Address fields.</p> <p>Enter S (Server) to set the VSG to assign network information (IP address, DNS information etc.) to Ethernet device(s) connected to the LAN port. This is the default setting.</p> |
| Start IP Address | <p>This field is visible when you enter S in the DHCP Service field.</p> <p>Enter the first of the continuous addresses in the IP address pool. The default is 10.59.1.2.</p> |
| DHCP Pool Size | <p>This field is visible when you enter S in the DHCP Service field.</p> <p>This field specifies the size or count of the IP address pool. Enter a number not greater than 1024. The default is 253.</p> |
| Lease Time | <p>This field is visible when you enter S in the DHCP Service field.</p> <p>Specify the time (in minutes between 1 and 71582788) a DHCP client is allowed to use an assigned IP address. When the lease time expires, the DHCP client is given a new, unused IP address. The default is 1440 minutes.</p> |

Table 72 SMT: LAN Configuration (continued)

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Relay Server IP Address | This field is only visible when you enter R in the DHCP Service field. If the VSG is set to function as a DHCP relay, enter the IP address of the DHCP server. |
| Primary/Secondary DNS IP Address | These fields are visible when you enter S in the DHCP Service field. Enter the IP address of the DNS server(s) in the Primary DNS IP Address and/or Secondary DNS IP Address fields. You <i>must</i> specify a DNS server. |

At the "(S)ave and return R)eturn without saving M)odify:" prompt, type S and press [ENTER] to save the changes and return to the previous screen, type R and press [ENTER] to discard all changes and return to the previous screen or type M and press [ENTER] to continue configuring the fields. Restart the device when prompted

Press [ESC] and enter Y to stop any actions in the current screen and return to the previous screen. All changes will be discarded.

27.4 View Current Configuration

From the main menu, enter 4 and press [ENTER] to display the **System Status** menu as shown next.

Figure 147 SMT: System Status

| System Status | |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| System Name | : |
| Doamin Name | : |
| Console Port Speed | :9600 |
| Web Server Port | :80 |
| E-Mail Server Redirect | : |
| WAN Configuration | |
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | :Static IP |
| IP Address | :192.168.1.1 |
| Subnet Mask | :255.255.255.0 |
| Gateway | :192.168.1.254 |
| Primary DNS Server | :168.95.1.1 |
| Secondary DNS Server | : |
| DHCP Configuration | |
| DHCP Service? (D/R/S) | :Server |
| Start IP Address | :10.59.1.2 |
| DHCP Pool Size | :253 |
| Lease Time | :1440 |
| Primary DNS IP Address | :168.95.1.1 |
| Secondary DNS IP Address | : |
| Press any key to return. | |

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 73 SMT: System Status

| FIELD | DESCRIPTION |
|--|--|
| System Name | This field displays the name of the VSG for identification purposes. |
| Domain Name | This field displays the domain name. |
| Console Port Speed | This field displays the console port speed (1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 14400, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200). |
| Web Server Port | This field displays the port number for the embedded web server. If the port number is not 80 , then you need to append the port number to the WAN port IP address to access the VSG web configurator. For example, if 8010 is the web server port number, then you must enter "http://www.192.168.1.1:8010" in the address bar on the web browser where 192.168.1.1 is the WAN or LAN port IP address. |
| E-mail Server IP Address | This field displays the IP address of the e-mail server to which the VSG forwards the e-mail when the subscriber's e-mail server(s) is behind a NAT-enabled network or firewall. |
| WAN Configuration | |
| WAN Type? (D/S/P/T) | This field displays the WAN IP address assignment method (Static IP Setting or DHCP Client). |
| IP Address | This field displays the WAN IP address of the VSG. |
| Subnet Mask | This field displays the subnet mask on the WAN port. |
| Gateway | This field displays the IP address of the default gateway. |
| Primary DNS Server | This field displays the IP address of the primary DNS server. |
| Secondary DNS Server | This field displays the IP address of the secondary DNS server. |
| DHCP Configuration | |
| DHCP Service? (D/R/S) | This field displays the DHCP mode (Server, Relay or Disable) on the LAN port. |
| Start IP Address | This field is visible when the DHCP Service field is Server . This field displays the first of the contiguous addresses in the IP address pool. |
| DHCP Pool Size | This field is visible when the DHCP Service field is Server . This field displays the size of the DHCP client pool. |
| Lease Time | This field is visible when the DHCP Service field is Server . This field displays for how many minutes a DHCP client is allowed to use an assigned IP address. |
| Agent Server IP Address | This field is visible when the DHCP Service field displays Relay . This field displays the IP address of the DHCP relay agent. |
| Primary/Secondary DNS IP Address | These fields are visible when the DHCP Service field is Server . These two fields display the IP address(es) of the DNS server(s). |
| Press any key at the "Press any to return" prompt to go back to the previous screen. | |

CHAPTER 28

Configuration and Firmware Maintenance

This chapter shows you how to maintain the firmware and configuration file.



Warning: Do not interrupt the file upload process as this may PERMANENTLY damage the device.

28.1 Filename Convention

The configuration file contains the factory default settings in the menus such as password, DHCP Setup, TCP/IP Setup, etc. Once you have customized the settings of the VSG, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

The firmware or the configuration files do not have any filename conventions. There is not a specific file extension or filename conventions that you need to follow. Therefore, you can specify any name or file extension for the firmware and the configuration files.

However, it is recommended to use the “.bin” file extension for the firmware file and “.rom” for the configuration file for management purposes.

28.2 Firmware Upgrade

The following sections show you how to upgrade the firmware using the SMT and the web configurator.

28.2.1 Firmware Upgrade Using the Web Configurator

There are two ways to upgrade the firmware in the VSG: manually or scheduled.

To manually upgrade the firmware, you have to down the latest firmware from www.zyxel.com. With scheduled firmware upgrade, the VSG automatically checks for, downloads and upgrades the latest firmware every time interval specified.

The following figure shows the top links when you click **System Tools** and **Firmware**.

Figure 148 Firmware Upgrade: Links

[Manual Firmware Upgrade](#) | [Scheduled Firmware Upgrade](#)

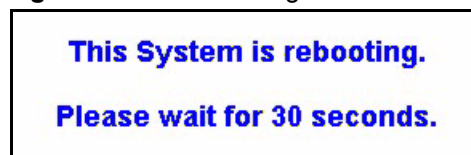
28.2.1.1 Manual Firmware Upgrade

Follow the steps below to upgrade the firmware manually.

- 1 Download the latest firmware from www.zyxel.com to your computer. Unzip the file if it is zipped.
- 2 Access the web configurator. Refer to the section on accessing the web configurator for instructions.
- 3 Click **System Tools**, **Firmware** and the **Manual Firmware Upgrade** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 149 Firmware Upgrade: Manual

- 4 Specify the firmware file name in the **Local PC File Path** field (or click **Browse** to locate it).
- 5 Click **Apply** to start the file transfer process.
- 6 When the file transfer is completed successfully, the following message displays and the VSG automatically restarts to complete the firmware upgrade process.

Figure 150 Web Configurator: Firmware Upgrade Successful

- 7 After the VSG finishes restarting, access the web configurator again. Check the firmware version number in the **System Status** screen.

28.2.1.2 Manual Firmware Upgrade via a TFTP Server

Follow the steps below to upload the firmware using the web configurator.

- 1 Download the latest firmware from www.zyxel.com and store it in a TFTP server. Unzip the file if it is zipped.

- 2 Run a TFTP server program and specify the location of the firmware file and the communication mode. Refer to the documentation that comes with your TFTP server program for instructions.
- 3 Access the web configurator. Refer to the section on accessing the web configurator for instructions.
- 4 Click **System Tools**, **Firmware** and the **Manual Firmware Upgrade** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 151 Firmware Upgrade: Manual Using a TFTP Server

| Manual Firmware Upgrade | |
|--|--|
| To upgrade the firmware, click Browse to locate the firmware file and click Apply . or use remote TFTP server. | |
| Local PC File Path | <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |
| TFTP Server IP Address: | <input type="text"/> Binary File Name: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> |

- 5 Specify the IP address of the TFTP server in the **TFTP Server IP Address** field.
- 6 Specify the name of the firmware file in the **Binary File Name** field.
- 7 Click **Apply** to start the file transfer process.
- 8 When the file transfer is completed successfully, the following message displays and the VSG automatically restarts to complete the firmware upgrade process.
- 9 After the VSG finishes restarting, access the web configurator again. Check the firmware version number in the **System Status** screen.

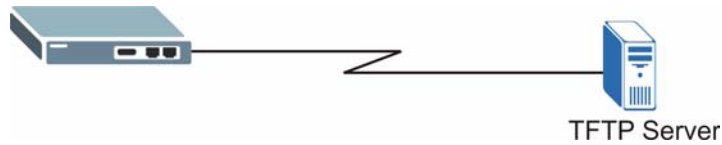
28.2.1.3 Scheduled Firmware Upgrade

You can set the VSG to automatically check and download a new firmware from a TFTP server. This allows you to automate the firmware upgrade process if you have more than one VSG on your network. A synchronization file contains information on firmware version and filename. A sample synchronization file is shown next.

Figure 152 Synchronization File Example

| Synchronization Check File Sample Code |
|---|
| Version=1.04.b4 Filename=vsg1200.bin |
| <input type="button" value="Close"/> |

You have to manually download the latest firmware from www.zyxel.com to the TFTP server and update the synchronization file.

Figure 153 Scheduled Firmware Upgrade Example

The following describes the automatic firmware upgrade process.

- 1 The VSG checks the synchronization file on the TFTP server for the firmware version number.
- 2 If the synchronization file has the latest firmware version number, VSG retrieves the latest firmware file as specified in the synchronization file.
- 3 VSG upgrades the firmware and restarts.



Note: During the firmware upgrade process, the VSG disconnects all subscriber Internet access. Subscribers need to log in again.

Click **System Tools**, **Firmware** and click the **Scheduled Firmware Upgrade** link to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 154 Firmware Upgrade: Scheduled

Scheduled Firmware Upgrade

Disable
 Enable

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| TFTP Server IP | <input type="text"/> |
| Synchronization Check File | <input type="text"/> View Sample File |
| Frequency | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Weekly <input type="radio"/> Daily <input type="radio"/> Hourly <input type="text" value="Sunday"/> <input type="text" value="00"/> Hour <input type="text" value="00"/> Min. |

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 74 Firmware Upgrade: Scheduled

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------|---|
| Disable | Select Disable to de-activate scheduled firmware upgrade. |
| Enable | Select Enable to activate scheduled firmware upgrade. Then set the following fields. |
| TFTP Server IP | Enter the IP address of the TFTP server where the firmware resides. |

Table 74 Firmware Upgrade: Scheduled (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|----------------------------|--|
| Synchronization Check File | A Synchronization Check file is a file containing the latest firmware filename and version number on the TFTP server. Click View Sample File to display an example. Enter the name of the check file. |
| Frequency | Set how often (Weekly, Daily or Hourly) you want to have the VSG check for new firmware and upgrade to new firmware if available (default Weekly). Then select the day (applies only when you select Weekly), the hour (applies when you select Daily or Hourly) and the minute that you want the VSG to do the check and upload. |
| Apply | Click Apply to save the changes. |

28.2.2 Firmware Upgrade Using SMT



Note: You *must* run a TFTP server on a computer where a firmware file is stored to perform file upload.

Follow the steps below to configure the TFTP settings in the SMT. You *must* still have a WAN/LAN connection between the VSG and the TFTP server computer at the same time.

- 1 Connect the computer directly to the VSG through the console port. Refer to the section on establishing a console port connection for more information.
- 2 In the SMT main menu, type 5 and press [ENTER] to display the **Utilities Menu** screen.

Figure 155 SMT: Utilities Main Menu

```

Utilities Menu

1)Firmware Upgrade
2)Change Password
3)Return to Main Menu

Enter selection:

```

Enter a numeric between 1 and 3.

- 3 Type 1 and press [ENTER] to display the Firmware Upgrade screen.
- 4 Enter the IP address of the computer running the TFTP server in the TFTP Server IP Address field.
- 5 Specify the name of the firmware file in the Download Filename field.

Figure 156 SMT: Firmware Upgrade

```

                                Firmware Upgrade

                                TFTP Server IP Address :172.21.4.72
                                Download Filename       :VSG1200V108.bin

                                E)xecute Download      R)eturn to Main Menu   M)odify
                                Enter Selection:

Enter the command key and press enter.

```

6 Type **E** at the “Enter Selection:” prompt to get the firmware file from the TFTP server.

Figure 157 SMT: Firmware Upgrade Process

```

                                Firmware Upgrade

                                TFTP Server IP Address :172.21.4.72
                                Download Filename       :VSG1200V108.bin

                                |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|
                                *****

```

7 When the file transfer is complete, the VSG automatically reboots. Wait until the VSG finishes rebooting before accessing the VSG again.

28.3 Configuration File Maintenance

You can only use the web configurator to perform configuration file backup and restore.



Warning: DO NOT INTERRUPT THE FILE TRANSFER PROCESS AS THIS MAY PERMANENTLY DAMAGE YOUR DEVICE.

28.3.1 Backup Configuration Using HTTP

Backup is highly recommended once your VSG is functioning properly.

1 Click **System Tools and Configuration**. A screen displays as shown next.

Figure 158 System Tools: Configuration: Backup

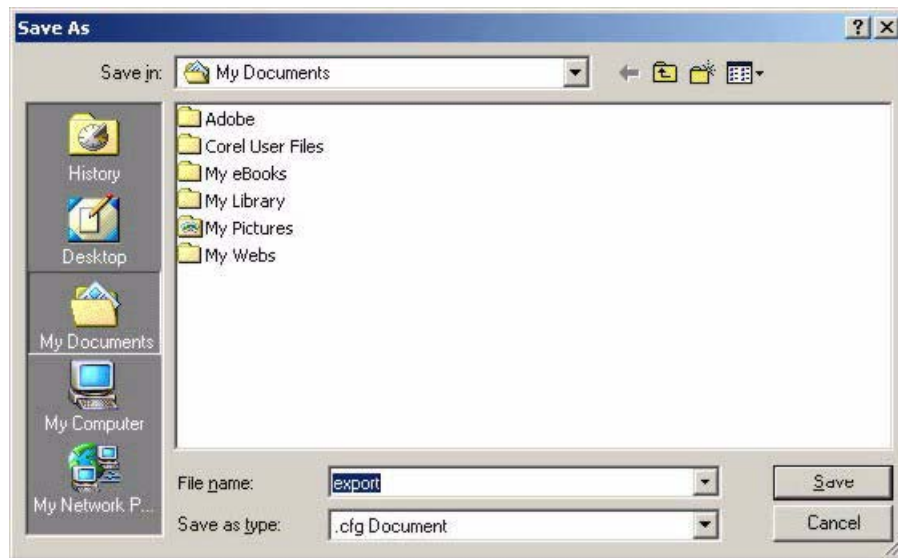
| Configuration | |
|---|---|
| This feature can import your saved settings to this device or export the stored settings from this device to your PC. | |
| Backup | |
| Click Backup to save the current system configuration to your computer. | |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Restore | |
| To restore your stored system configuration to this device | |
| File Path: <input type="text"/> Browse... | Apply |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Reset the system back to factory defaults | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep subscriber profile | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep port-location mapping profile Apply | |

2 Click **Backup**. A **File Download** window displays as shown next.

Figure 159 Configuration Backup: File Download



3 Select **Save this file to disk** and click **OK**. A **Save As** window displays.

Figure 160 Configuration Backup: Save As

- 4 Specify the file name and/or location and click **Save** to start the backup process.

28.3.2 Backup Configuration Using TFTP

- 1 Click **System Tools and Configuration**. A screen displays as shown next.
- 2 In the **Backup** section, enter the IP address of the TFTP server in dotted decimal notation in the **TFTP Server IP Address** field.
- 3 Specify a file name for the configuration backup in the **Text File Name** field.

Figure 161 System Tools: Configuration: Backup using TFTP

| Configuration | |
|---|---|
| This feature can import your saved settings to this device or export the stored settings from this device to your PC. | |
| Backup | |
| Click Backup to save the current system configuration to your computer. | |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Restore | |
| To restore your stored system configuration to this device | |
| File Path: <input type="text"/> Browse... | Apply |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Reset the system back to factory defaults | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep subscriber profile | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep port-location mapping profile Apply | |

4 Click **Apply**. When the file transfer process is complete, a screen displays as follows.

Figure 162 Configuration Backup: TFTP: Successful

| Success! |
|---|
| The Export Configuration has been transferred. |
| back |

28.3.3 Restore Configuration Using HTTP

This section shows you how to restore a previously saved configuration.



Note: This function erases the current configuration before restoring a previous back up configuration; please do not attempt to restore unless you have a backup configuration file stored on disk.

1 Click **System Tools** and **Configuration**. A screen displays as shown next.

Figure 163 System Tools: Configuration: Restore

| Configuration | |
|---|---|
| This feature can import your saved settings to this device or export the stored settings from this device to your PC. | |
| Backup | |
| Click Backup to save the current system configuration to your computer. | |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Restore | |
| To restore your stored system configuration to this device | |
| File Path: <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> Apply |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> Apply |
| Reset the system back to factory defaults | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep subscriber profile | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep port-location mapping profile Apply | |

- 2** In the **Restore** section, specify the location and filename of a configuration file in the **File Path** field or click **Browse**.
- 3** Click **Apply** to start the configuration restore process. The VSG automatically restarts after the restoration process is complete.

28.3.4 Restore Configuration Using TFTP

This section shows you how to restore a previously saved configuration.



Note: This function erases the current configuration before restoring a previous back up configuration; please do not attempt to restore unless you have a backup configuration file stored on disk.

- 1** Click **System Tools** and **Configuration**. A screen displays as shown next.

Figure 164 System Tools: Configuration: Restore: TFTP

| Configuration | |
|---|--|
| This feature can import your saved settings to this device or export the stored settings from this device to your PC. | |
| Backup | |
| Click Backup to save the current system configuration to your computer. | |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |
| Restore | |
| To restore your stored system configuration to this device | |
| File Path: <input type="text"/> | <input type="button" value="Browse..."/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |
| TFTP Server IP Address: <input type="text"/> | Text File Name: <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |
| Reset the system back to factory defaults | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep subscriber profile | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Keep port-location mapping profile | |
| <input type="button" value="Apply"/> | |

- 2 In the **Restore** section, Enter the IP address of the TFTP server in dotted decimal notation in the **TFTP Server IP Address** field.
- 3 Specify a file name for the configuration backup in the **Text File Name** field.
- 4 Click **Apply** to start the configuration restore process. The VSG automatically restarts after the restoration process is complete.

CHAPTER 29

Troubleshooting

This chapter covers potential problems and possible remedies. After each problem description, some instructions are provided to help you to diagnose and to solve the problem.

29.1 Using the LEDs to Diagnose Problems

The LEDs are useful aides for finding possible problem causes.

29.1.1 The Power LED

The **PWR** LED on the front panel does not light up.

Table 75 Troubleshooting the Power LED

| STEPS | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|-------|---|
| 1 | Check the connections from the VSG to the power source. Make sure you are using the supplied power cord and proper power supply. Refer to the appendix on product specifications. |
| 2 | Make sure the power source is turned on and that the VSG is receiving sufficient power. |
| 3 | If these steps fail to correct the problem, contact your local distributor for assistance. |

29.1.2 The LAN Port LEDs

None of the LEDs for the LAN port(s) light up when connected to an Ethernet device.

Table 76 Troubleshooting the LAN LED

| STEPS | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|-------|--|
| 1 | Make sure the Ethernet cable is properly connected to the LAN port. |
| 2 | Verify that the attached device(s) is turned on and properly connected to the VSG. |
| 3 | Verify that Ethernet cable length does not exceed 100 meters. |
| 4 | Make sure the network adapters are working on the attached devices. |

29.1.3 The WAN Port LEDs

None of the LEDs for the WAN port light up when connected to an Ethernet device.

Table 77 Troubleshooting the WAN LED

| STEP | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|------|--|
| 1 | Verify that the attached device(s) is turned on and properly connected to the VSG. |
| 2 | Verify that Ethernet cable length does not exceed 100 meters. |
| 3 | Make sure the network adapters are working on the attached devices. |

29.2 The Console Port

I cannot access the VSG through the console port.

Table 78 Troubleshooting Console Port

| STEP | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|------|--|
| 1 | Check to see if the VSG is connected to your computer using a console cable. |
| 2 | Check to see if the communications program is configured correctly. Set the communication parameters as stated here. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Emulation: auto detect• Baud Rate: 9600 bps• No Parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit• Flow Control: None |
| 3 | Make sure you entered the correct username and password. The default administrator username is "admin" and the default password is "1234". The username and password are case sensitive. If you have forgotten the administrator user name and/or password, you must reset the VSG back to the factory defaults using the reset button. Use a pointed object to press the reset button on the front panel to reset the VSG. All your custom configuration will be lost. |

29.3 Web Configurator

I cannot access the web configurator.

Table 79 Troubleshooting Web Configurator

| STEP | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|------|--|
| 1 | Make sure you are using the correct WAN or LAN IP address. |
| 2 | <p>Make sure you entered the correct username and password. The default administrator username is "admin" and the default password is "1234". The username and password are case-sensitive.</p> <p>If you change the server port number, you need to append the port number to the WAN or LAN port IP address to access the web configurator. For example, if you enter "8010" as the web server port number, then you must enter "http://www.192.168.1.1:8010" where 192.168.1.1 is the WAN or LAN port IP address.</p> <p>If you have forgotten the administrator user name and/or password, you must reset the VSG back to the factory defaults using the reset button. Use a pointed object to press the reset button on the front panel to reset the VSG. All your custom configuration will be lost.</p> |
| 3 | Ping the VSG from your computer on the WAN or LAN. |

The web configurator does not display properly.

Table 80 Troubleshooting Internet Browser Display

| STEP | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|------|--|
| 1 | Make sure you are using Internet Explorer (version 4.0 and later) or Netscape (version 6.0 or later) with JavaScript support enabled. |
| 2 | <p>Delete the temporary web files and log in again.</p> <p>In Internet Explorer, click Tools, Internet Options and then click the Delete Files ... button. When a Delete Files window displays, select Delete all offline content and click OK. (Steps may vary depending on the version of your Internet browser.)</p> |

29.4 Internet Access

A subscriber cannot connect to the Internet through the VSG.

Table 81 Troubleshooting Internet Access

| STEPS | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|-------|---|
| 1 | Check your Internet settings on your modem and/or router. |
| 2 | Make sure the subscriber enters the correct user name and password to log in to the VSG. The user name and password are case sensitive. |
| 3 | Make sure the account is still valid. |
| 4 | Make sure there is no conflict in IP address assignment. Refer to the appendix. |

29.5 The Statement Printer

(This section is applicable when you purchase an external statement printer, also known as an account generator printer).

I cannot print account information using a statement printer.

Table 82 Troubleshooting the Statement Printer

| STEP | CORRECTIVE ACTION |
|------|---|
| 1 | Make sure the statement printer is connected to a power source and is turned on. |
| 2 | Check that the statement printer is connected to the port labeled Console . |
| 3 | Make sure there is enough printing paper in the statement printer. |
| 4 | Check that you select Account Generator Device in the Console Type field in the System screen. |
| 5 | 4 Make sure you configure and associate a billing profile for the first button in the Dynamic Account Operator Panel screen. The first button corresponds to the button on the statement printer. |

Appendix A

Product Specifications

Table 83 Product Specifications: General

| | |
|---|---|
| Standard | IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T Ethernet IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet |
| Interface | One 10/100 Ethernet WAN port (auto-crossover) Four 10/100 Ethernet LAN ports (auto-crossover) One RS232 serial port for console setting or an external statement printer One PMS RS232 serial port One reset button |
| Networking | Plug-and-play subscriber Internet access Supports 1024 simultaneous users NAT (RFC1631) LAN DHCP server (with client pool size of 1024) and DHCP relay HTTP proxy SMTP/DNS redirection WAN connection (static IP/DHCP client /PPPoE/PPTP) NAT for VPN (IPSec/PPTP) |
| Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) | Web-based authentication RADIUS AAA Secondary RADIUS server Proprietary CAS (Central Authentication Service) Global roaming support Built-in Authentication and accounting Vendor Specific Attributes Static/Dynamic Accounting |
| Security | Port-based VLAN Layer 2 isolation VPN pass through (PPTP/ L2TP) SSL secure user login process SSL secure web-based administration Authorized remote management |
| Billing | Flexible, time-based billing Port-Location Mapping Credit card (via Authorize.net) |
| PMS Billing | Supports Micros Fidelio, Spectrum MK II, Marriott and Proprietary. PMS transaction logs Supports IEEE802.1q tag-based VLAN infrastructure |
| Local Services | Walled garden Advertisement URL link Login page re-direction Customized subscriber login page MAC/IP/URL passthrough |

Table 84 Product Specifications: Performance and Management

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Maximum Throughput | 15.2Mbps |
| Concurrent Users | 1,024 |
| Management | Web-based management TFTP/HTTP firmware upgrade Schedules firmware upgrade Backup/Restore configuration Real-time status list Remote authorized management Configuration file import/export LAN device management Syslog Session trace SNMP v1/v2 (MIB II with traps) |

Table 85 Product Specifications: Physical and Environmental

| | |
|----------------|---|
| LED | Power ALARM WAN/LAN: 10/100, LK/ACT, FDX |
| Dimension | 440(W) x 116(L) x 44(H) mm |
| Temperature | 0°C to 50°C |
| Humidity | 10% to 95% (non-condensing) |
| Power | Internal universal switching power supply 100-220 V AC, 50/60 Hz Maximum power consumption: 10W |
| Certifications | FCC part 15 Class A CE |

Appendix B

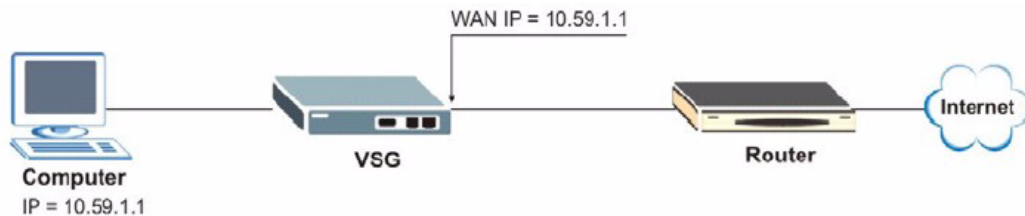
IP Address Assignment Conflicts

This appendix describes situations where IP address conflicts may occur. Subscribers with duplicate IP addresses will not be able to access the Internet.

Scenario 1: The VSG is using the same LAN and WAN IP addresses

The following figure shows an example where the VSG is using a WAN IP address that is the same as the IP address of a computer on the LAN.

Figure 165 IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 1



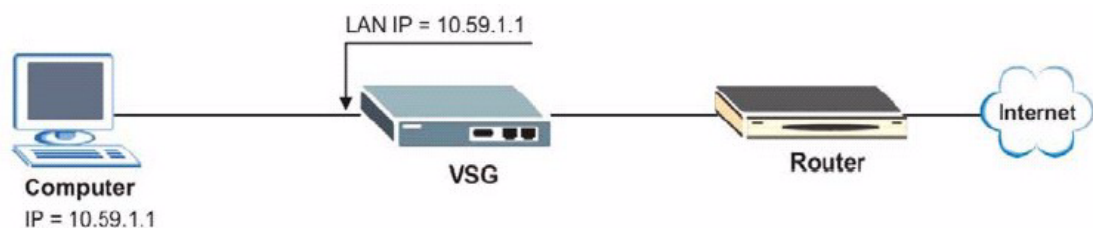
You must set the VSG to use different LAN and WAN IP addresses on different subnets if you enable DHCP server on the VSG. For example, you set the WAN IP address to 192.59.1.1 and the LAN IP address to 10.59.1.1.

Otherwise, it is recommended the VSG use a public WAN IP address.

Scenario 2: The VSG LAN IP address conflicts with the DHCP client IP address

In the following figure, the VSG is acting as a DHCP server. The VSG assigns an IP address, which is the same as its LAN port IP address, to a DHCP client attached to the LAN.

Figure 166 IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 2

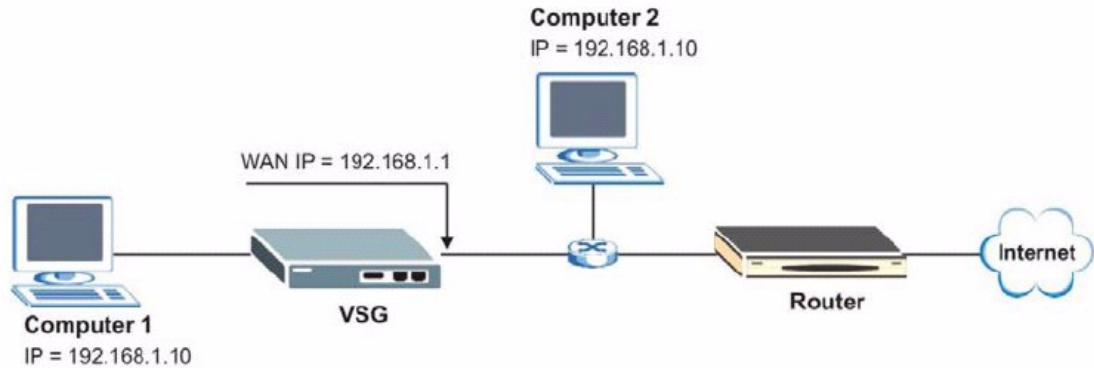


To solve this problem, make sure the VSG LAN IP address is not in the DHCP IP address pool.

Scenario 3: The Subscriber IP address is the same as the IP address of a network device

The following figure depicts an example where the subscriber IP address is the same as the IP address of a network device not attached to the VSG.

Figure 167 IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 3



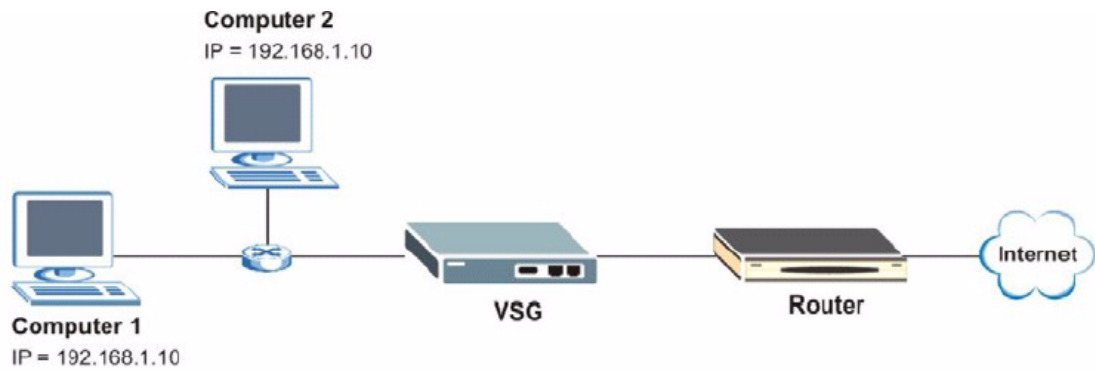
You must set the VSG to use different LAN and WAN IP addresses on different subnets if you enable DHCP server on the VSG. For example, you set the WAN IP address to 192.59.1.1 and the LAN IP address to 10.59.1.1.

Otherwise, It is recommended the VSG use a public WAN IP address.

Scenario 4: Two or more subscribers have the same IP address.

By converting all private IP addresses to the WAN IP address, the VSG allows subscribers with different network configurations to access the Internet. However, there are situations where two or more subscribers are using the same private IP address. This may happen when a subscriber is configured to use a static (or fixed) IP address that is the same as the IP address the VSG DHCP server assigns to another subscriber acting as a DHCP client.

In this case, the subscribers are not able to access the Internet.

Figure 168 IP Address Conflicts: Scenario 4

This problem can be solved by adding a VLAN-enabled switch or setting the computers to obtain IP addresses dynamically.

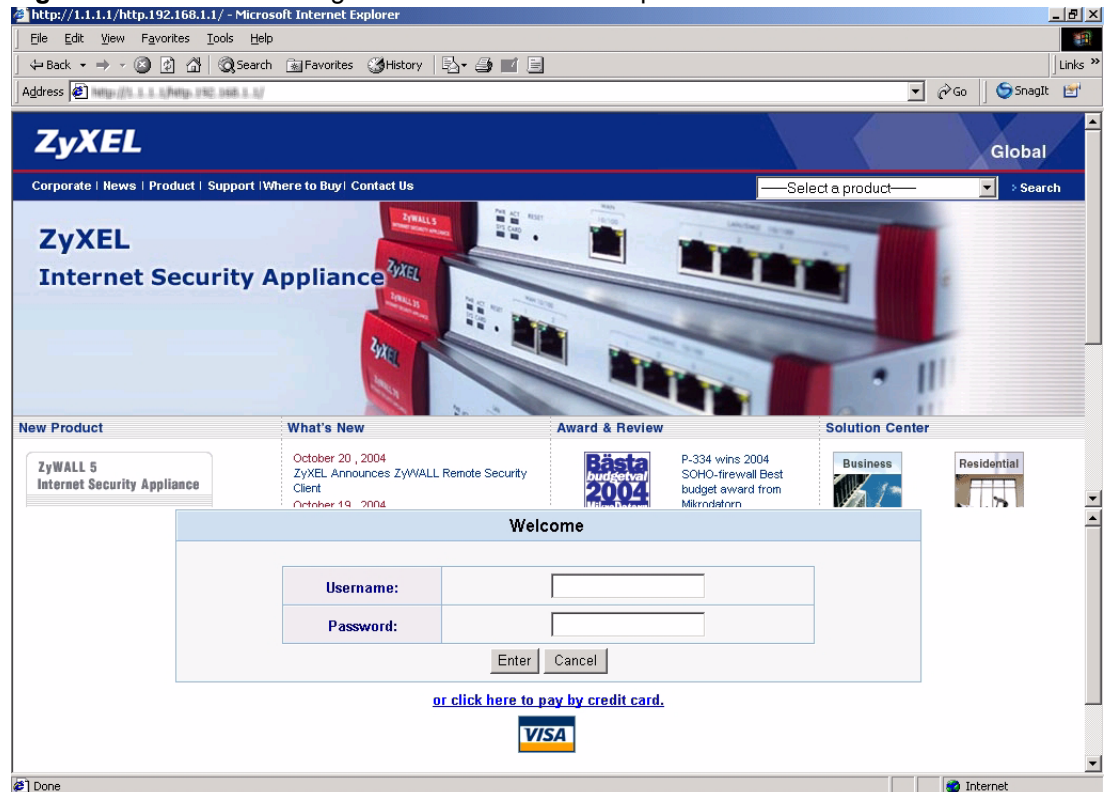
Appendix C

Subscriber Login

To log in as a subscriber, enter a web site address such as www.zyxel.com in a web browser.

Depending on the settings, a subscriber login screen displays prompting for a user name and password.

Figure 169 Subscriber Login Screen: Framed Example



Enter a user name and password and click **Enter**. Depending on the settings in the VSG, either the specified web page or an advertisement web page displays. After a successful login, an information window may display.

Figure 170 Subscriber Login: Information Window Example



Appendix D

Vendor Specific Attributes

This appendix describes the format of the vendor specific attributes supported.

Overview

With RADIUS server authentication, you can define vendor specific attributes (VSAs) in addition to the set of standard RADIUS attributes defined in RFC 2865 and RFC 2866. A VSA is an attribute-value pair that is sent between a RADIUS server and the VSG. It is necessary you define the VSAs on the RADIUS sever if you want the VSG to perform any of the additional functions listed below:

- Limit Download bandwidth per subscriber
- Limit Upload bandwidth per subscriber
- Limit Total traffic bandwidth allowed per subscriber
- Specify advertising web site per subscriber
- Enable/disable SMTP redirect



Note: Before you can make use of these functions, configure the proprietary VSAs on the RADIUS server. Refer to the documentation that comes with your RADIUS server for more information.

VSG-1200 Supported VSAs

The following table describes the VSGs specific to the VSG-1200.

Table 86 VSG-1200 Supported VSAs

| NO. | NAME | DESCRIPTION | TYPE | VALUE |
|-----|-------------------|---|---------|--------------|
| 1 | Traffic-Limit | <p>This attribute defines total bandwidth (in Mbytes) allowed for a subscriber. Internet access is based on the total upload/download bandwidth regardless of the account expiration time.</p> <p>This attribute is supported when you set the VSG to use an external RADIUS server for user authentication in accumulation mode.</p> | Integer | maximum 4095 |
| 2 | SMTP Redirect | <p>This attribute indicates whether the VSG is to re-direct E-mails.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = do not redirect e-mails. 1 = allow e-mail redirection. <p>Note: To allow e-mail redirection, you <i>must</i> configure the SMTP settings on the VSG. Refer to Section 4.8 “Server Configuration” on page 61 for more information.</p> | Integer | 0, 1 |
| 3 | BW-Up | <p>This attribute defines the upload bandwidth allowed for a subscriber. Internet access is based on the upload bandwidth regardless of the account expiration time. This means that a subscriber is allowed to access the Internet until the total upload bandwidth allocated is reached.</p> <p>This attribute is supported when you enable bandwidth management on the VSG with the class of service based on the RADIUS settings. Refer to Chapter 16, “Bandwidth Management,” on page 141 for more information.</p> <p>Note: You <i>must</i> also specify the BW-Down attribute.</p> | Integer | 64 -24567 |
| 4 | BW-Down | <p>This attribute defines the download bandwidth allowed for a subscriber. Internet access is based on the download bandwidth regardless of the account expiration time. This means that a subscriber is allowed to access the Internet until the total download bandwidth allocated is reached.</p> <p>This attribute is supported when you enable bandwidth management on the VSG with the class of service based on the RADIUS settings. Refer to Chapter 16, “Bandwidth Management,” on page 141 for more information.</p> <p>Note: You <i>must</i> also specify the BW-Up attribute.</p> | Integer | 64 - 24567 |
| 5 | Portable Page URL | <p>This attribute allows you to specify a different advertising web site for each subscriber after a successful login.</p> | String | maximum 200 |

Error Messages

The following table describes the VSA-related error messages.

Table 87 VSA-related Error Messages

| ERROR MESSAGE | DESCRIPTION |
|--|---|
| VSA Error!-Traffic limit-Time to finish is selected | The VSG is set to use the "Time to Finish" mode while the VSA response from the external RADIUS server include the Traffic-limit attribute. |
| VSA Error!-Traffic limit-Over value | The value for Traffic-limit attribute is more than the maximum allowed (4095). |
| VSA Error!-SMTP Redirect-no SMTP server setup | No e-mail server configuration is set on the VSG while the VSA response from the external RADIUS server indicates SMTP redirection is activated (with an attribute value of 1). |
| VSA Error!-BW-up/down-Bandwidth Management =disable | Bandwidth management is not activated on the VSG while the VSA response from the external RADIUS server contains upload and download bandwidth limits. |
| VSA Error!-BW-up/down-Equal bandwidth for all subscriber selected | Bandwidth management is activated on the VSG with equal bandwidth applied to all subscribers. |
| VSA Error!-BW-up/down-Class of service is selected but no BW-up/down | Bandwidth management is activated on the VSG with class of service selected while no upload/download bandwidth information is obtained from the external RADIUS server. |
| VSA Error!-BW-up/down-No BW-down | The external RADIUS server does not send the BW-down attribute value to the VSG. |
| VSA Error!-BW-up/down-No BW-up | The external RADIUS server does not send the BW-up attribute value to the VSG. |
| VSA Error!-BW-up/down-BW-up out of range | The value for BW-up attribute is invalid. |
| VSA Error!-BW-up/down-BW-down out of range | The value for BW-down attribute is invalid. |

Appendix E

Report Printing Using the SP-200

This appendix shows you how to print reports using the SP-200.

Overview

The SP-200 allows you to print status reports about the subscriber accounts and general VSG system information. Simply press a key combination on the SP-200 to print a report instantly without accessing the web configurator.

The following lists the reports that you can print using the SP-200.

- Daily account summary
- Monthly account summary
- System status
- Network statistics

Initial Setup

Do the following before you start report printing using an SP-200.

- 1 Purchase an SP-200 from your local dealer if you don't have one.
- 2 Set the function of the console port on the VSG for statement printer connection (see [Section 3.5 "General System Setting" on page 44](#)).
- 3 Connect the SP-200 to the **CONSOLE** port on the VSG (see [Section 2.2 "Hardware Connections" on page 36](#)).
- 4 Turn on the power to the SP-200.

Refer to the user's guide that comes with your SP-200 for more information.

Key Combination

The following table lists the key combination to print each report. Refer to [Figure 51 on page 97](#) for button labels on the SP-200.



Note: You must press the key combination on the SP-200 within five seconds to print.

Table 88 SP-200: Report Printing Key Combination

| REPORT TYPE | KEY COMBINATION |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| Daily Account Summary | A B C A A |
| Monthly Account Summary | A B C B B |
| System Status | A B C C C |
| Network Statistics | A B C A B |

The following sections describe each report printout in detail.

Daily Account Summary

This report shows the username and price for the subscriber account(s) that is created for the current day.

Key combination: A B C A A

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 171 SP-200: Daily Account

| | |
|-----------------------|-------|
| Daily Account | |
| ----- | |
| 2004/10/28 | |
| ----- | |
| Username | Price |
| 9v269m55 | 10.00 |
| bwh2y943 | 20.00 |
| ----- | |
| TOTAL ACCOUNTS: 2 | |
| TOTAL PRICE: \$ 30.00 | |
| ----- | |
| 2004/10/28 14:12:11 | |
| ---End--- | |

Monthly Account Summary

This report shows the username and price for the subscriber account(s) that is created for the current month.

Key combination: A B C B B

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 172 SP-200: Monthly Account

| Monthly Account | |
|-----------------------|-------|
| ----- | |
| 2004/10 | |
| ----- | |
| Username | Price |
| bwh2y936 | 10.00 |
| Cindy | 10.00 |
| 9v269m55 | 10.00 |
| bwh2y943 | 20.00 |
| ----- | |
| TOTAL ACCOUTNS: 4 | |
| TOTAL PRICE: \$ 50.00 | |
| ----- | |
| 2004/10/28 14:11:26 | |
| ---End--- | |

System Status

This report shows the current system information such as the host name and WAN IP address.

Key combination: A B C C C

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 173 SP-200: System Status

```

System Status
-----
ITEM DESCRIPTION
-----
WAST ESTABLISHED
SYST 02D:02H:42M:46S
-----
HOST VSG-1200
FRMW 1.05
BTRM 1.01
LOCA
WAMA 00-90-0E-00-4A-29
LAMA 00-90-0E-00-4A-28
WATP DHCP
WAIP 172.21.2.67
WASM 255.255.0.0
WAGW 172.21.0.254
PDNS 172.20.0.63
SDNS 172.20.0.27
DHCP DHCP SERVER
DHSP 10.59.1.2
DHEP 10.59.1.254
DHLT 1440
EMAIL /PORT25
-----

2004/10/28 11:24:42

---End---

```

The following table describes the labels in this report.

Table 89 SP-200: System Status

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|---|
| WAST | This field displays the WAN connection status. |
| SYST | This field displays the time since the system was last restarted. |
| HOST | This field displays the description name of the VSG for identification purposes. |
| FRMW | This field displays the version of the firmware on the VSG. |
| BTRM | This field displays the version of the bootrom. |
| WAMA | This field displays the MAC address of the VSG on the WAN. |
| LAMA | This field displays the MAC address of the VSG on the LAN. |
| WATP | This field displays the mode of the WAN port. |
| WAIP | This field displays the IP address of the WAN port on the VSG. |
| WASM | This field displays the subnet mask of the WAN port on the VSG. |
| WAGW | This field displays the IP address of the default gateway of the WAN port on the VSG. |
| PDNS | This field displays the IP address of the primary DNS server. |
| SDNS | This field displays the IP address of the secondary DNS server. |

Table 89 SP-200: System Status (continued)

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|-------|---|
| DHCP | This field displays the DHCP mode (DHCP Server , Relay or DHCP Disable) on the LAN. |
| DHSP | If the DHCP field is DHCP Server , this field displays the first of the continuous addresses in the IP address pool. If the DHCP field is DHCP Relay , this field displays the DHCP server IP address. |
| DHEP | This field is visible when the DHCP is DHCP Server . This field displays the end of the continuous addresses in the IP address pool. |
| DHLT | This field is visible when the DHCP is DHCP Server . This field displays the time (in minutes) a DHCP client is allowed to use an assigned IP address. |
| EMAIL | The field displays e-mail server port number. |

Network Statistics

This report shows the network statistics on the VSG.

Key combination: A B C A B

The following figure shows an example.

Figure 174 SP-200: Network Statistics

```

Network
-----
ITEM DESCRIPTION
-----
WAST ESTABLISHED
SYST 02D:02H:42M:46S
-----
WATD 37
WARD 4816
WATE 0
WARE 0
LATD 1768
LARD 4616
LATE 0
LARE 0
-----

2004/10/28 15:24:42

---End---
```

The following table describes the labels in this report.

Table 90 SP-200: Network Statistics

| LABEL | DESCRIPTION |
|--------------|---|
| WAST | This field displays the WAN connection status. |
| SYST | This field displays the time since the system was last restarted. |
| WATD | This field displays the number of packets transmitted on the WAN. |
| WARD | This field displays the number of packets received on the WAN. |
| WATE | This field displays the number of error packets transmitted on the WAN. |
| WARE | This field displays the number of error packets received on the WAN. |
| LATD | This field displays the number of packets transmitted on the LAN. |
| LARD | This field displays the number of packets received on the LAN. |
| LATE | This field displays the number of error packets transmitted on the LAN. |
| LARE | This field displays the number of error packets received on the LAN. |

Appendix F

Cable Types and Cable Pin Assignments

RJ-45 Ethernet Port

The following table describes the types of network cable used for the different connection speeds.



Note: Make sure the Ethernet cable length between connections does not exceed 100 meters (328 feet).

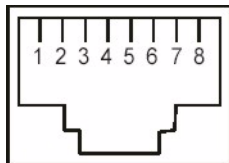
Table 91 Network Cable Types

| SPEED | NETWORK CABLE TYPE |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 10 Base-TX 100 | 2-pair UTP/STP Category 3, 4 or 5 |
| 100 Base-TX 100 | 2-pair UTP/STP Category 5 |

The WAN Port

The following table describes the Ethernet cable pin assignments for the WAN port.

Table 92 WAN Port Cable Ping Assignments



| PIN NO | RJ-45 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT | DESIGNATION |
|--------|-------------------------|-------------|
| 1 | Output Transmit Data + | TD+ |
| 2 | Input Transmit Data + | RD+ |
| 3 | Input Transmit Data + | RD+ |
| 4 | Unused | N/U |
| 5 | Unused | N/U |
| 6 | Input Transmit Data - | RD- |
| 7 | Unused | N/U |
| 8 | Unused | N/U |

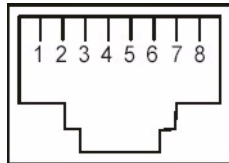
Make sure that the Ethernet cable connection between the VSG and the hub or router conforms to the pin assignments as shown in the following diagram.

Figure 175 WAN Port Cable Pin Assignments

| ETHERNET DEVICE (SWITCH/HUB/ROUTER ETC.) | | VANTAGE SERVICE GATEWAY | |
|---|-----|-------------------------|-----|
| 1 | RD+ | 1 | TD+ |
| 2 | RD- | 2 | TD- |
| 3 | TD+ | 3 | RD+ |
| 6 | TD- | 6 | RD- |

The LAN Port

The following table describes the Ethernet cable pin assignments for the LAN port.

Table 93 LAN Port Cable Pin Assignments

| PIN NO | RJ-45 SIGNAL ASSIGNMENT | DESIGNATION |
|--------|-------------------------|-------------|
| 1 | Input Transmit Data + | RD+ |
| 2 | Input Transmit Data - | RD- |
| 3 | Output Transmit Data + | TD+ |
| 4 | Unused | N/U |
| 5 | Unused | N/U |
| 6 | Output Transmit Data - | TD- |
| 7 | Unused | N/U |
| 8 | Unused | N/U |

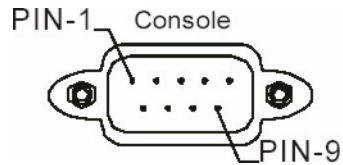
Make sure that the Ethernet cable connection between the VSG and a computer or switch uplink port conforms to the pin assignments as shown in the figure.

Figure 176 LAN Port Cable Pin Assignments

| ETHERNET DEVICE (COMPUTER/ UPLINK PORT) | | VANTAGE SERVICE GATEWAY | |
|--|-----|-------------------------|-----|
| 1 | TD+ | 1 | RD+ |
| 2 | TD- | 2 | RD- |
| 3 | RD+ | 3 | TD+ |
| 6 | RD- | 6 | TD- |

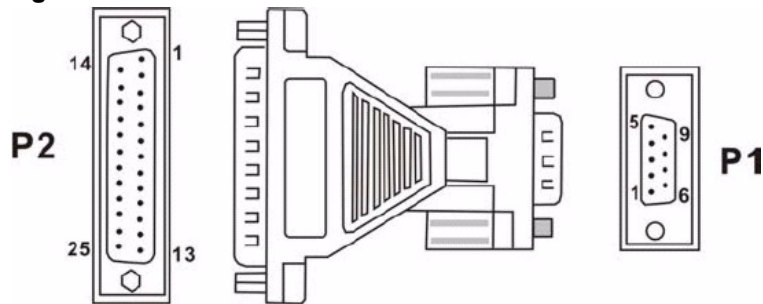
Serial Console Port

The following table describes the console cable pin assignments for the serial console port.

Table 94 Console Port Pin Assignment

| PIN NO | MNEMONIC | FUNCTION |
|--------|----------|---|
| 1 | DCD | Received Line Signal Detector to the VSG. |
| 2 | TXT | Transmitted Data from the VSG. |
| 3 | RXT | Received Data to the VSG. |
| 4 | DTR | Data Terminal Ready from the VSG. |
| 5 | GND | Signal Ground (Common) |
| 6 | DSR | Data Set Ready to the VSG. |
| 7 | RTS | Request to Send from the VSG. |
| 8 | CTS | Clear to Send to the VSG. |
| 9 | RI | Ring Indicator to the VSG. |

DB25 Male to DB9 Male Connector

Figure 177 DB25 Male to DB9 Male Connector**Table 95** DB25 Male to DB9 Male Connector Ping Assignment

| P1 | P2 |
|----|----|
| 1 | 8 |
| 2 | 2 |
| 3 | 3 |
| 4 | 20 |
| 5 | 7 |
| 6 | 6 |
| 7 | 4 |
| 8 | 5 |
| 9 | 22 |

Appendix G

Setting up Your Computer's IP Address

All computers must have a 10M or 100M Ethernet adapter card and TCP/IP installed.

Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems and all versions of UNIX/LINUX include the software components you need to install and use TCP/IP on your computer. Windows 3.1 requires the purchase of a third-party TCP/IP application package.

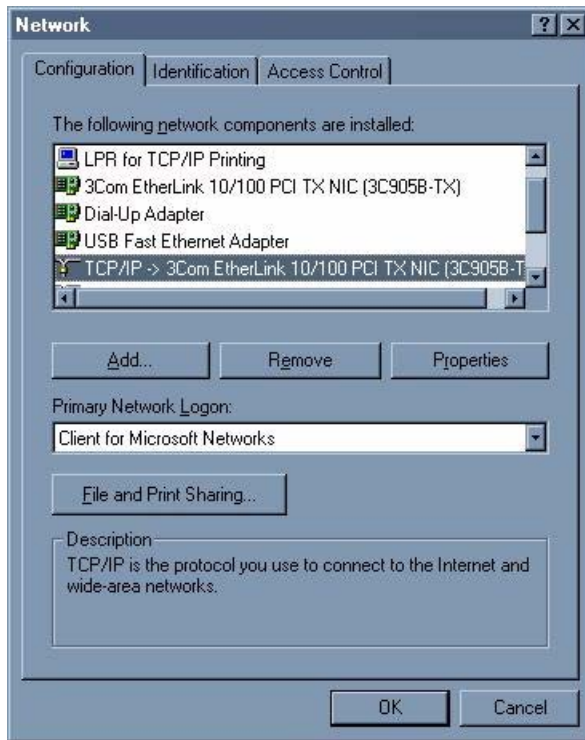
TCP/IP should already be installed on computers using Windows NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems.

After the appropriate TCP/IP components are installed, configure the TCP/IP settings in order to "communicate" with your network.

If you manually assign IP information instead of using dynamic assignment, make sure that your computers have IP addresses that place them in the same subnet as the VSG-1200's LAN port.

Windows 95/98/Me

Click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel** and double-click the **Network** icon to open the **Network** window

Figure 178 Windows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration

Installing Components

The **Network** window **Configuration** tab displays a list of installed components. You need a network adapter, the TCP/IP protocol and Client for Microsoft Networks.

If you need the adapter:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Adapter** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select the manufacturer and model of your network adapter and then click **OK**.

If you need TCP/IP:

- 1 In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Protocol** and then click **Add**.
- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of **manufacturers**.
- 4 Select **TCP/IP** from the list of network protocols and then click **OK**.

If you need Client for Microsoft Networks:

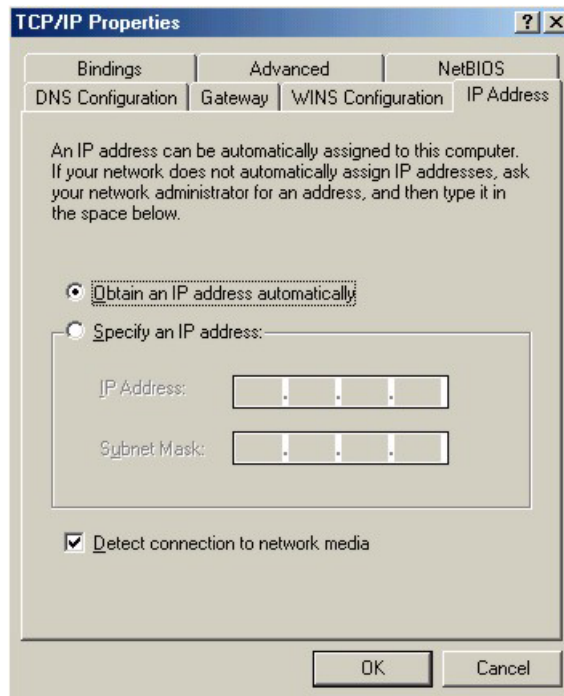
- 1 Click **Add**.
- 2 Select **Client** and then click **Add**.

- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of manufacturers.
- 4 Select **Client for Microsoft Networks** from the list of network clients and then click **OK**.
- 5 Restart your computer so the changes you made take effect.

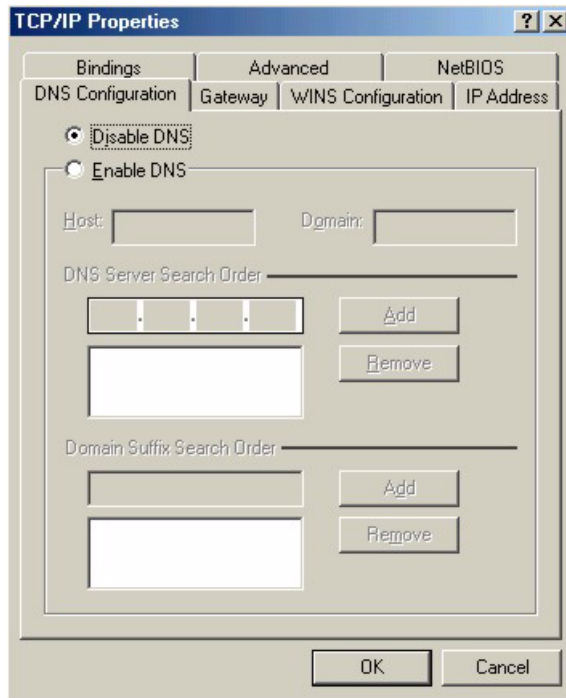
Configuring

- 1 In the **Network** window **Configuration** tab, select your network adapter's TCP/IP entry and click **Properties**
- 2 Click the **IP Address** tab.
 - If your IP address is dynamic, select **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
 - If you have a static IP address, select **Specify an IP address** and type your information into the **IP Address** and **Subnet Mask** fields.

Figure 179 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address



- 3 Click the **DNS Configuration** tab.
 - If you do not know your DNS information, select **Disable DNS**.
 - If you know your DNS information, select **Enable DNS** and type the information in the fields below (you may not need to fill them all in).

Figure 180 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration**4** Click the **Gateway** tab.

- If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove previously installed gateways.
- If you have a gateway IP address, type it in the **New gateway field** and click **Add**.

5 Click **OK** to save and close the **TCP/IP Properties** window.**6** Click **OK** to close the **Network** window. Insert the Windows CD if prompted.**7** Turn on your VSG-1200 and restart your computer when prompted.

Verifying Settings

1 Click **Start** and then **Run**.**2** In the **Run** window, type "winipcfg" and then click **OK** to open the **IP Configuration** window.**3** Select your network adapter. You should see your computer's IP address, subnet mask and default gateway.

Windows 2000/NT/XP

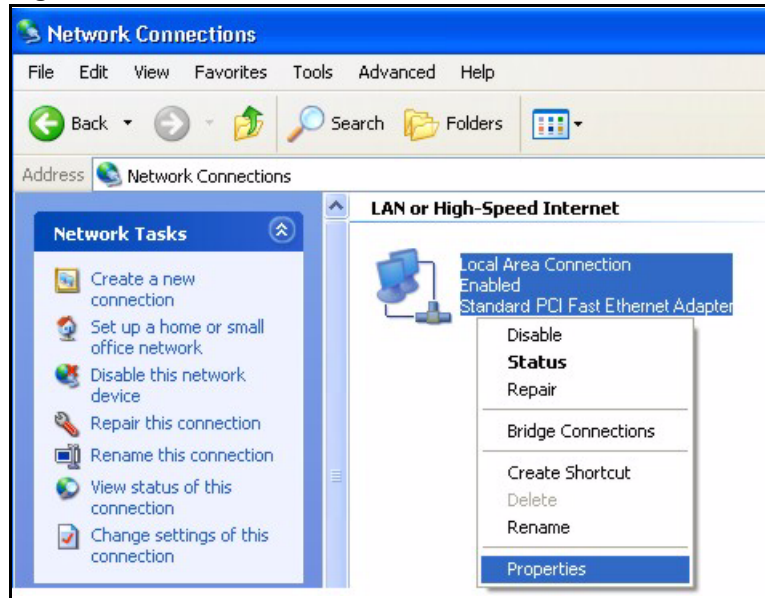
1 For Windows XP, click **start**, **Control Panel**. In Windows 2000/NT, click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel**.

Figure 181 Windows XP: Start Menu

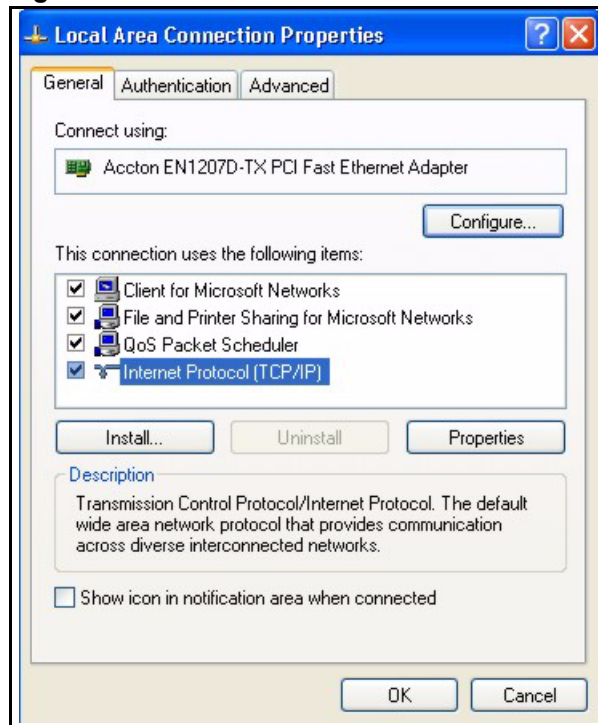
2 For Windows XP, click **Network Connections**. For Windows 2000/NT, click **Network and Dial-up Connections**.

Figure 182 Windows XP: Control Panel

3 Right-click **Local Area Connection** and then click **Properties**.

Figure 183 Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties

- 4 Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** (under the **General** tab in Win XP) and click **Properties**.

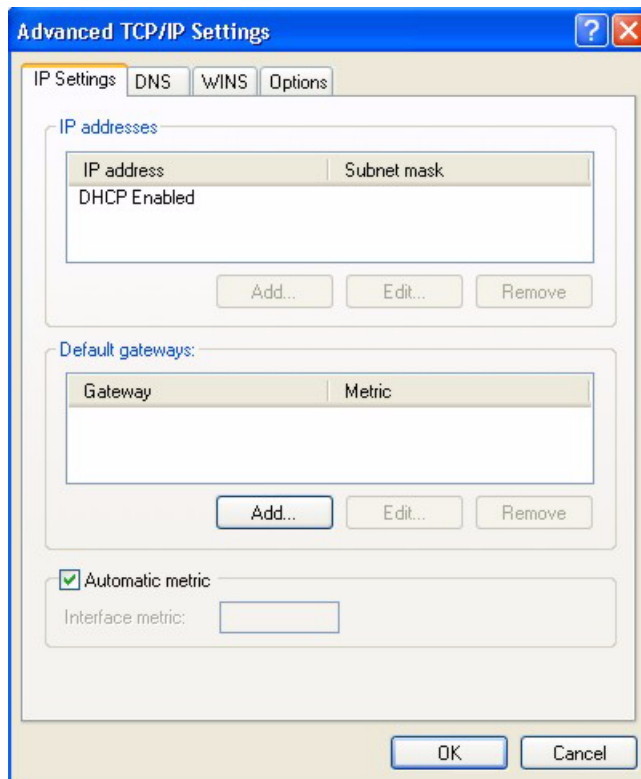
Figure 184 Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties

- 5 The **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window opens (the **General** tab in Windows XP).

- If you have a dynamic IP address click **Obtain an IP address automatically**.

- If you have a static IP address click **Use the following IP Address** and fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields. Click **Advanced**.

Figure 185 Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Settings



- 6** If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove any previously installed gateways in the **IP Settings** tab and click **OK**.

Do one or more of the following if you want to configure additional IP addresses:

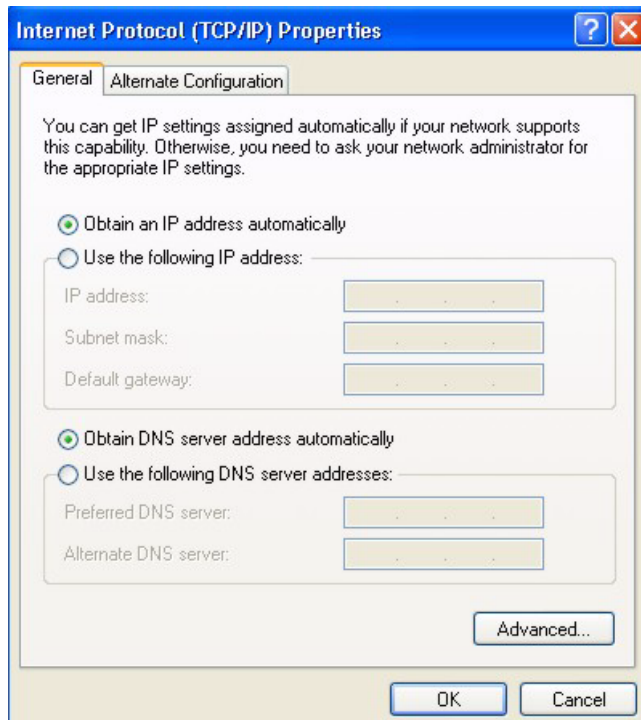
- In the **IP Settings** tab, in IP addresses, click **Add**.
- In **TCP/IP Address**, type an IP address in **IP address** and a subnet mask in **Subnet mask**, and then click **Add**.
- Repeat the above two steps for each IP address you want to add.
- Configure additional default gateways in the **IP Settings** tab by clicking **Add** in **Default gateways**.
- In **TCP/IP Gateway Address**, type the IP address of the default gateway in **Gateway**. To manually configure a default metric (the number of transmission hops), clear the **Automatic metric** check box and type a metric in **Metric**.
- Click **Add**.
- Repeat the previous three steps for each default gateway you want to add.
- Click **OK** when finished.

- 7** In the **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window (the **General** tab in Windows XP):

- Click **Obtain DNS server address automatically** if you do not know your DNS server IP address(es).
- If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click **Use the following DNS server addresses**, and type them in the **Preferred DNS server** and **Alternate DNS server** fields.

If you have previously configured DNS servers, click **Advanced** and then the **DNS** tab to order them.

Figure 186 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties



8 Click **OK** to close the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.

9 Click **OK** to close the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.

10 Turn on your VSG-1200 and restart your computer (if prompted).

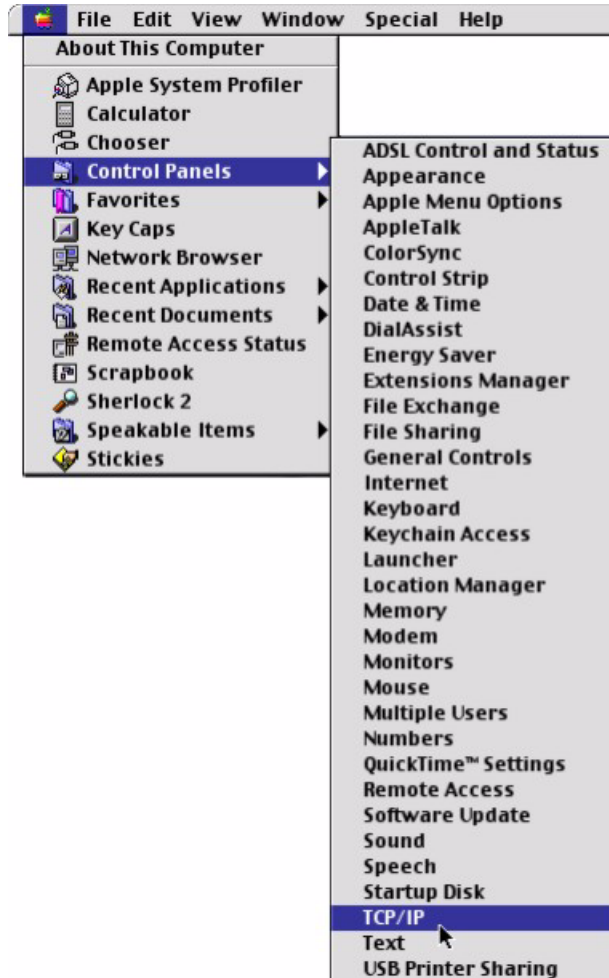
Verifying Settings

- 1** Click **Start**, **All Programs**, **Accessories** and then **Command Prompt**.
- 2** In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER]. You can also open **Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab.

Macintosh OS 8/9

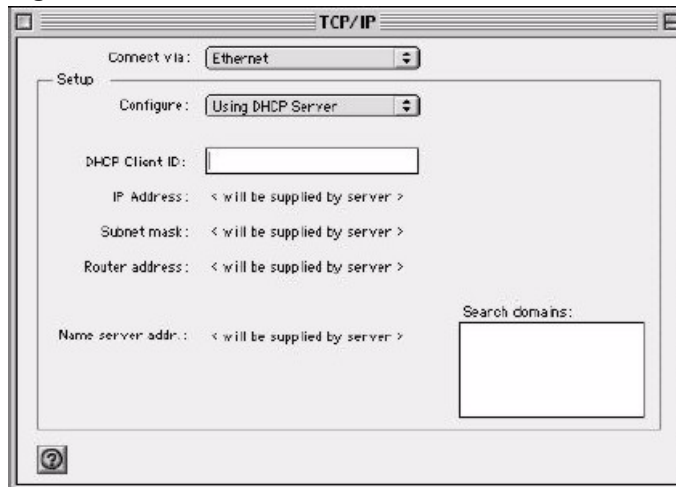
- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, **Control Panel** and double-click **TCP/IP** to open the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.

Figure 187 Macintosh OS 8/9: Apple Menu



2 Select **Ethernet built-in** from the **Connect via** list.

Figure 188 Macintosh OS 8/9: TCP/IP



3 For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP Server** from the **Configure:** list.

- 4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:
 - From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.
 - Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
 - Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
 - Type the IP address of your VSG-1200 in the **Router address** box.
- 5 Close the **TCP/IP Control Panel**.
- 6 Click **Save** if prompted, to save changes to your configuration.
- 7 Turn on your VSG-1200 and restart your computer (if prompted).

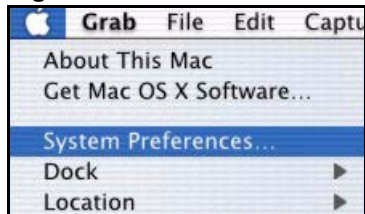
Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **TCP/IP Control Panel** window.

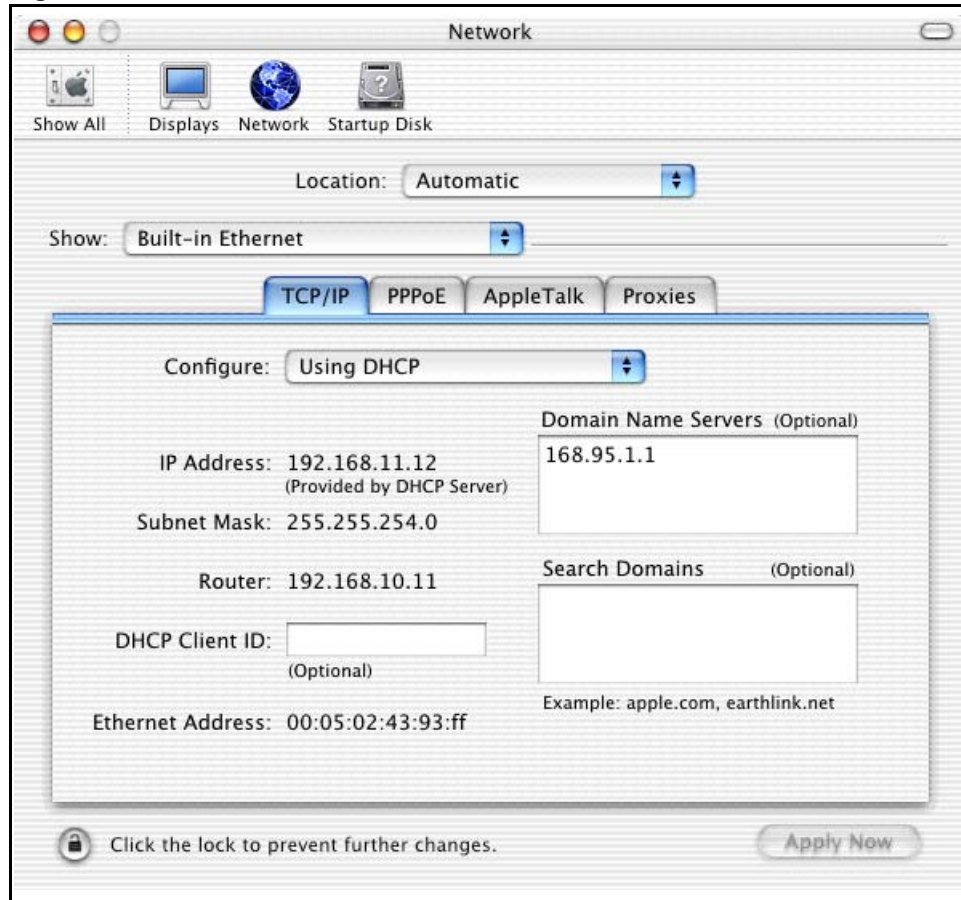
Macintosh OS X

- 1 Click the **Apple** menu, and click **System Preferences** to open the **System Preferences** window.

Figure 189 Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu



- 2 Click **Network** in the icon bar.
 - Select **Automatic** from the **Location** list.
 - Select **Built-in Ethernet** from the **Show** list.
 - Click the **TCP/IP** tab.
- 3 For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP** from the **Configure** list.

Figure 190 Macintosh OS X: Network

4 For statically assigned settings, do the following:

- From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.
- Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
- Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
- Type the IP address of your VSG-1200 in the **Router address** box.

5 Click **Apply Now** and close the window.

6 Turn on your VSG-1200 and restart your computer (if prompted).

Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **Network** window.

Appendix H

IP Subnetting

IP Addressing

Routers “route” based on the network number. The router that delivers the data packet to the correct destination host uses the host ID.

IP Classes

An IP address is made up of four octets (eight bits), written in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1. IP addresses are categorized into different classes. The class of an address depends on the value of its first octet.

- Class “A” addresses have a 0 in the left most bit. In a class “A” address the first octet is the network number and the remaining three octets make up the host ID.
- Class “B” addresses have a 1 in the left most bit and a 0 in the next left most bit. In a class “B” address the first two octets make up the network number and the two remaining octets make up the host ID.
- Class “C” addresses begin (starting from the left) with 1 1 0. In a class “C” address the first three octets make up the network number and the last octet is the host ID.
- Class “D” addresses begin with 1 1 1 0. Class “D” addresses are used for multicasting. (There is also a class “E” address. It is reserved for future use.)

Table 96 Classes of IP Addresses

| IP ADDRESS: | | OCTET 1 | OCTET 2 | OCTET 3 | OCTET 4 |
|-------------|-----|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------|
| Class A | 0 | Network number | Host ID | Host ID | Host ID |
| Class B | 10 | Network number | Network number | Host ID | Host ID |
| Class C | 110 | Network number | Network number | Network number | Host ID |



Note: Host IDs of all zeros or all ones are not allowed.

Therefore:

A class “C” network (8 host bits) can have $2^8 - 2$ or 254 hosts.

A class “B” address (16 host bits) can have $2^{16} - 2$ or 65534 hosts.

A class “A” address (24 host bits) can have $2^{24} - 2$ hosts (approximately 16 million hosts).

Since the first octet of a class “A” IP address must contain a “0”, the first octet of a class “A” address can have a value of 0 to 127.

Similarly the first octet of a class “B” must begin with “10”, therefore the first octet of a class “B” address has a valid range of 128 to 191. The first octet of a class “C” address begins with “110”, and therefore has a range of 192 to 223.

Table 97 Allowed IP Address Range By Class

| CLASS | ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (BINARY) | ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (DECIMAL) |
|---------|---------------------------------------|--|
| Class A | 00000000 to 01111111 | 0 to 127 |
| Class B | 10000000 to 10111111 | 128 to 191 |
| Class C | 11000000 to 11011111 | 192 to 223 |
| Class D | 11100000 to 11101111 | 224 to 239 |

Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). A subnet mask has 32 is a “1” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is “0” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just as IP addresses are. The “natural” masks for class A, B and C IP addresses are as follows.

Table 98 “Natural” Masks

| CLASS | NATURAL MASK |
|-------|---------------|
| A | 255.0.0.0 |
| B | 255.255.0.0 |
| C | 255.255.255.0 |

Subnetting

With subnetting, the class arrangement of an IP address is ignored. For example, a class C address no longer has to have 24 bits of network number and 8 bits of host ID. With subnetting, some of the host ID bits are converted into network number bits. By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the left most bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a “/” followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows all possible subnet masks for a class “C” address using both notations.

Table 99 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

| SUBNET MASK IP ADDRESS | SUBNET MASK “1” BITS | LAST OCTET BIT VALUE |
|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 255.255.255.0 | /24 | 0000 0000 |
| 255.255.255.128 | /25 | 1000 0000 |
| 255.255.255.192 | /26 | 1100 0000 |
| 255.255.255.224 | /27 | 1110 0000 |
| 255.255.255.240 | /28 | 1111 0000 |
| 255.255.255.248 | /29 | 1111 1000 |
| 255.255.255.252 | /30 | 1111 1100 |

The first mask shown is the class “C” natural mask. Normally if no mask is specified it is understood that the natural mask is being used.

Example: Two Subnets

As an example, you have a class “C” address 192.168.1.0 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

Table 100 Two Subnets Example

| | NETWORK NUMBER | HOST ID |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| IP Address | 192.168.1. | 0 |
| IP Address (Binary) | 11000000.10101000.00000001. | 00000000 |
| Subnet Mask | 255.255.255. | 0 |
| Subnet Mask (Binary) | 11111111.11111111.11111111. | 00000000 |

The first three octets of the address make up the network number (class “C”). You want to have two separate networks.

Divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate subnets by converting one of the host ID bits of the IP address to a network number bit. The “borrowed” host ID bit can be either “0” or “1” thus giving two subnets; 192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 and 192.168.1.128 with mask 255.255.255.128.



Note: In the following charts, shaded/bolded last octet bit values indicate host ID bits “borrowed” to form network ID bits. The number of “borrowed” host ID bits determines the number of subnets you can have. The remaining number of host ID bits (after “borrowing”) determines the number of hosts you can have on each subnet.

Table 101 Subnet 1

| | NETWORK NUMBER | LAST OCTET BIT VALUE |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| IP Address | 192.168.1. | 0 |
| IP Address (Binary) | 11000000.10101000.00000001. | 00000000 |
| Subnet Mask | 255.255.255. | 128 |
| Subnet Mask (Binary) | 11111111.11111111.11111111. | 10000000 |
| Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0 | Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1 | |
| Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127 | Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126 | |

Table 102 Subnet 2

| | NETWORK NUMBER | LAST OCTET BIT VALUE |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| IP Address | 192.168.1. | 128 |
| IP Address (Binary) | 11000000.10101000.00000001. | 10000000 |
| Subnet Mask | 255.255.255. | 128 |
| Subnet Mask (Binary) | 11111111.11111111.11111111. | 10000000 |
| Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128 | Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129 | |
| Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255 | Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254 | |

The remaining 7 bits determine the number of hosts each subnet can have. Host IDs of all zeros represent the subnet itself and host IDs of all ones are the broadcast address for that subnet, so the actual number of hosts available on each subnet in the example above is $2^7 - 2$ or 126 hosts for each subnet.

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the subnet itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the directed broadcast address for the first subnet. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for the first subnet is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126. Similarly the host ID range for the second subnet is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.

Example: Four Subnets

The above example illustrated using a 25-bit subnet mask to divide a class “C” address space into two subnets. Similarly to divide a class “C” address into four subnets, you need to “borrow” two host ID bits to give four possible combinations of 00, 01, 10 and 11. The subnet mask is 26 bits (11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000) or 255.255.255.192. Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving 2^6-2 or 62 hosts for each subnet (all 0’s is the subnet itself, all 1’s is the broadcast address on the subnet).

Table 103 Subnet 1

| | NETWORK NUMBER | LAST OCTET BIT VALUE |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| IP Address | 192.168.1. | 0 |
| IP Address (Binary) | 11000000.10101000.00000001. | 00000000 |
| Subnet Mask (Binary) | 11111111.11111111.11111111. | 11000000 |
| Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0 | Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1 | |
| Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63 | Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62 | |

Table 104 Subnet 2

| | NETWORK NUMBER | LAST OCTET BIT VALUE |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| IP Address | 192.168.1. | 64 |
| IP Address (Binary) | 11000000.10101000.00000001. | 01000000 |
| Subnet Mask (Binary) | 11111111.11111111.11111111. | 11000000 |
| Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64 | Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65 | |
| Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127 | Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126 | |

Table 105 Subnet 3

| | NETWORK NUMBER | LAST OCTET BIT VALUE |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| IP Address | 192.168.1. | 128 |
| IP Address (Binary) | 11000000.10101000.00000001. | 10000000 |
| Subnet Mask (Binary) | 11111111.11111111.11111111. | 11000000 |
| Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128 | Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129 | |
| Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191 | Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190 | |

Table 106 Subnet 4

| | NETWORK NUMBER | LAST OCTET BIT VALUE |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| IP Address | 192.168.1. | 192 |
| IP Address (Binary) | 11000000.10101000.00000001. | 11000000 |
| Subnet Mask (Binary) | 11111111.11111111.11111111. | 11000000 |
| Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192 | Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193 | |
| Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255 | Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254 | |

Example Eight Subnets

Similarly use a 27-bit mask to create 8 subnets (001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110).

The following table shows class C IP address last octet values for each subnet.

Table 107 Eight Subnets

| SUBNET | SUBNET ADDRESS | FIRST ADDRESS | LAST ADDRESS | BROADCAST ADDRESS |
|--------|----------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 30 | 31 |
| 2 | 32 | 33 | 62 | 63 |
| 3 | 64 | 65 | 94 | 95 |
| 4 | 96 | 97 | 126 | 127 |
| 5 | 128 | 129 | 158 | 159 |
| 6 | 160 | 161 | 190 | 191 |
| 7 | 192 | 193 | 222 | 223 |
| 8 | 224 | 225 | 254 | 255 |

The following table is a summary for class “C” subnet planning.

Table 108 Class C Subnet Planning

| NO. “BORROWED” HOST BITS | SUBNET MASK | NO. SUBNETS | NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 1 | 255.255.255.128 (/25) | 2 | 126 |
| 2 | 255.255.255.192 (/26) | 4 | 62 |
| 3 | 255.255.255.224 (/27) | 8 | 30 |
| 4 | 255.255.255.240 (/28) | 16 | 14 |
| 5 | 255.255.255.248 (/29) | 32 | 6 |
| 6 | 255.255.255.252 (/30) | 64 | 2 |
| 7 | 255.255.255.254 (/31) | 128 | 1 |

Subnetting With Class A and Class B Networks.

For class “A” and class “B” addresses the subnet mask also determines which bits are part of the network number and which are part of the host ID.

A class “B” address has two host ID octets available for subnetting and a class “A” address has three host ID octets (see [Table 96](#)) available for subnetting.

The following table is a summary for class “B” subnet planning.

Table 109 Class B Subnet Planning

| NO. “BORROWED” HOST BITS | SUBNET MASK | NO. SUBNETS | NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 1 | 255.255.128.0 (/17) | 2 | 32766 |
| 2 | 255.255.192.0 (/18) | 4 | 16382 |
| 3 | 255.255.224.0 (/19) | 8 | 8190 |
| 4 | 255.255.240.0 (/20) | 16 | 4094 |
| 5 | 255.255.248.0 (/21) | 32 | 2046 |
| 6 | 255.255.252.0 (/22) | 64 | 1022 |
| 7 | 255.255.254.0 (/23) | 128 | 510 |
| 8 | 255.255.255.0 (/24) | 256 | 254 |
| 9 | 255.255.255.128 (/25) | 512 | 126 |
| 10 | 255.255.255.192 (/26) | 1024 | 62 |
| 11 | 255.255.255.224 (/27) | 2048 | 30 |
| 12 | 255.255.255.240 (/28) | 4096 | 14 |
| 13 | 255.255.255.248 (/29) | 8192 | 6 |
| 14 | 255.255.255.252 (/30) | 16384 | 2 |
| 15 | 255.255.255.254 (/31) | 32768 | 1 |

Index

Symbols

“natural” mask [266](#)

Numerics

4-Port Switch [30](#)

A

Abnormal Working Conditions [4](#)
 Access Control [31](#)
 access point (AP) [33](#)
 accessing a LAN device [184](#)
 methods [184](#)
 requirements [184](#)
 account expiration [94](#)
 account printout [86](#), [129](#)
 customize [129](#), [137](#)
 examples [132](#)
 preview [131](#)
 account printout preview [93](#)
 accounting [31](#)
 Accumulation [72](#)
 Time to Finish [72](#)
 accounting port [76](#)
 Accumulation [72](#), [75](#)
 Acts of God [4](#)
 advanced subscriber login screen [121](#)
 advertisement link [146](#), [240](#)
 frequency [146](#)
 sequence [146](#)
 applications [33](#)
 hotel application with PMS [34](#)
 Internet access for LAN networks [33](#)
 Internet access in public areas [33](#)
 assign IP address to a computer [253](#)
 authentication [31](#), [71](#)
 Built-in Authentication [72](#)
 CAS [71](#)
 RADIUS [72](#)
 types [71](#)
 User Agreement [71](#)

authentication port [76](#)
 authentication setup [73](#)
 Authroize.net [107](#)
 auto-crossover [37](#)
 automate firmware upgrade [217](#)
 automatic firmware upgrade
 process [218](#)

B

back up configuration file [220](#)
 backing up billing logs [185](#)
 bandwidth control [141](#)
 bandwidth limit
 downlink [82](#)
 uplink [82](#)
 Bandwidth Management [82](#), [141](#)
 activate [141](#)
 class-based [141](#), [143](#)
 equal share [141](#), [142](#)
 RADIUS [143](#)
 types [141](#)
 bandwidth management [240](#)
 billing [29](#), [79](#), [231](#)
 billing logs [184](#)
 backup [185](#)
 charge type [185](#)
 delete all [185](#)
 export [185](#)
 opening [186](#)
 sample [187](#)
 billing profile [79](#)
 bandwidth limit [82](#)
 create [79](#)
 currency [80](#)
 duration [82](#)
 edit [80](#)
 setting [80](#)
 Built-in Authentication [75](#)
 built-in authentication
 information window [125](#)
 scenario options [76](#)

C

- CA [189](#)
- CAS [29](#), [71](#), [75](#)
- CAS (Central Authentication Service) [29](#), [71](#)
- certificate [189](#)
 - private key [190](#)
 - secret password [190](#)
- Certification Authority (CA) [189](#)
- change system password [203](#)
- Charge [4](#)
- class of service bandwidth management [143](#)
- class-based bandwidth allocation [141](#)
 - activate [143](#)
- community [173](#)
- Components [4](#)
- Concurrent Access [86](#)
- concurrent access [94](#)
- concurrent user [86](#), [232](#)
 - allowable [179](#)
 - set [86](#)
- Condition [4](#)
- configuration file [215](#)
 - backup [220](#)
 - backup via TFTP [222](#)
 - backup via web configurator [220](#)
 - important note [220](#)
 - restore [223](#)
 - restore via TFTP [224](#)
 - restore via Web Configurator [223](#)
- configuration methods [27](#)
- Console port [37](#)
- console port [32](#), [36](#), [199](#), [250](#)
 - cable pin assignments [250](#)
 - change function [47](#)
 - communication parameters [199](#)
 - DB25 male connector [251](#)
 - DB9 male connector [251](#)
 - establish a connection [199](#)
 - SMT interface [199](#)
 - speed [202](#), [213](#)
 - statement printer [47](#)
- Copyright [2](#)
- Cost Of Transmission [160](#)
- create billing profiles [79](#)
- create dynamic subscriber account [97](#)
- create port-location mapping [103](#)
- create static subscriber account [86](#)
- create static subscriber accounts manually [88](#)
- credit card billing [29](#), [107](#)
 - authentication scenario option [78](#)
 - configuration steps [107](#)
 - credit card icons [109](#)

- how it works [107](#)
- service selection message [110](#)
- setup [108](#)
- subscriber information screen [109](#)
- subscriber login message [109](#)
- successful notification [113](#)
- transaction failed message [115](#)

- current user list [180](#)
- Customer Support [6](#)
- customize subscriber login screen [117](#)
- Czech Republic, Contact Information [6](#)

D

- daily account summary [244](#)
- Defective [4](#)
- Denmark, Contact Information [6](#)
- destination host [265](#)
- DHCP [31](#)
 - lease time [211](#)
- DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) [31](#)
- DHCP client [31](#)
 - pool size [231](#)
- DHCP client table [181](#)
 - update interval [181](#)
- DHCP pool size [211](#)
- DHCP Relay [31](#)
- DHCP relay [212](#)
- DHCP server [31](#), [211](#), [233](#)
- DHCP services [211](#)
- digital certificate [189](#)
- digital signature [189](#)
- dimension [232](#)
- Discretion [4](#)
- display subscriber account [94](#)
- DNS [255](#)
- DNS proxy [31](#)
- DNS server [208](#), [212](#)
- domain name [202](#), [213](#)
- dynamic IP address [208](#)
- dynamic subscriber account [95](#)
 - backup [100](#)
 - configuration [96](#)
 - create using statement printer [98](#)
 - create using web configurator [97](#)
 - display [99](#)
 - general settings [95](#)
 - method to create [95](#)
 - print [99](#)
 - SP Button [96](#)
 - statement printer settings [96](#)

Web-based Button [96](#)

E

edit a subscriber account [92](#)
edit billing profiles [80](#)
EIA standard size rack [35](#)
E-mail forwarding [31](#)
e-mail server
 redirect [203](#)
Equal Value [4](#)
equal-share bandwidth allocation [141](#)
 configure [142](#)
error messages [241](#)
Ethernet Cable [227](#)
Ethernet cable
 length specifications [249](#)
 types [249](#)
Ethernet port [249](#)
 speed [249](#)
export billing logs [185](#)

F

factory defaults [30](#)
Failure [4](#)
FCC [3](#)
features [29](#)
filename [215](#)
Finland, Contact Information [6](#)
firmware [215](#)
 download to TFTP server [217](#)
firmware download [215](#)
firmware upgrade [32](#), [215](#)
 about subscriber connection [218](#)
 automatic [217](#)
 from a TFTP Server [216](#)
 from computer [216](#)
 from TFTP server [219](#)
 important note on SMT [219](#)
 manual [216](#)
 methods [215](#)
 schedule frequency [219](#)
 scheduled [217](#)
 using SMT [219](#)
 using Web Configurator [215](#)
Firmware version [42](#)
firmware version [178](#), [246](#)
France, Contact Information [6](#)

FTP server [32](#)
Functionally Equivalent [4](#)

G

Gateway [160](#)
generate static subscriber accounts automatically [87](#)
Germany, Contact Information [6](#)
God, act of [4](#)

H

hardware installation [35](#)
hardwired address [181](#)
High Speed Internet Access (HSIA) [29](#), [71](#)
Hilton Group Corporation [29](#)
Hop Count [160](#)
Host ID [265](#)
host ID [265](#)
hotspots [29](#)
HSIA [29](#), [71](#), [75](#)
Hungary, Contact Information [6](#)

I

IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority) [76](#)
IEEE802.1q VLAN [103](#)
information window [125](#)
 example [127](#)
 session timeout messages [125](#)
 setup [125](#)
in-room billing [82](#)
install SSL certificate [193](#)
installation
 desktop [35](#)
 options [35](#)
 rack mount [35](#)
installation methods [32](#)
interface [231](#)
Introduction to VSG [29](#)
IP Address [160](#)
IP address [233](#), [265](#)
 setup [253](#)
IP address assignment [213](#), [233](#)
 important note [253](#)

IP address conflicts [233](#)
 scenario 1 [233](#)
 scenario 2 [233](#)
 scenario 3 [234](#)
 scenario 4 [234](#)

IP address setup [253](#)
 DNS information [255](#), [260](#)
 install components [254](#)
 Macintosh OS 8/9 [260](#)
 Macintosh OS X [262](#)
 verify settings [256](#), [260](#), [263](#)
 Windows 2000/NT/XP [256](#)
 Windows 95/98/Me [253](#)

IP Addressing [265](#)

IP Classes [265](#)

IP Static Route [159](#)

IP subnetting [265](#)

ipconfig [260](#)

K

Kazakhstan, Contact Information [6](#)

L

Labor [4](#)

LAN bandwidth management [141](#)

LAN device
 accessing via the VSG [184](#)
 management example [155](#)
 port mapping [153](#)
 remote management [153](#), [184](#)
 status [183](#)

LAN device management [153](#)

LAN devices [153](#)

LAN port
 cable pin assignment [250](#)

LAN port, the [36](#), [37](#), [250](#)

LAN ports [37](#)

LED [36](#)

local management [37](#)

Location Identifier [104](#)

log schedule [164](#)

logs [163](#), [164](#)
 formats [166](#)
 name [166](#)
 time interval [166](#)

M

MAC (Media Access Control) [181](#)

MAC (Media Access Control) Filter [32](#)

MAC filter [175](#)

Management Information Base (MIB) [172](#)
 manual firmware upgrade [216](#)
 mapping profiles to buttons on the statement printer [95](#)
 mask [266](#)

Materials [4](#)

Maximum Segment Size (MSS). [211](#)

Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) [210](#)

merchant password [109](#)

MIB [172](#)

monthly account summary [244](#)

mounting bracket [35](#)

N

NAT [65](#), [153](#)
 Definitions [65](#)
 How it works [66](#)
 on LAN [153](#)
 What it does [66](#)
 What NAT does [66](#)

NAT (Network Address Translation) [32](#)

NAT address pool [69](#)

NAT examples [67](#)

NAT Mapping Types [67](#)

NAT Pool [69](#)

NAT-enabled device [153](#)

network cable [249](#)

network management [32](#)

Network Management System (NMS) [172](#)

network number [266](#)

network statistics [247](#)

New [4](#)

NMS [172](#), [173](#)

North America Contact Information [6](#)

Norway, Contact Information [6](#)

O

octet [265](#)

online glossary [27](#)

Operating Condition [4](#)

P

Parts **4**

passthrough **149**

- destination URL or IP **151**
- subscriber computer IP or MAC **149**
- types **149**

pin assignment **249**

pin assignments **249**

Plug-and-Play Internet Access **30**

PMS **29, 79, 82**

- Based on Room **83**
- Based on Subscriber **83**
- charge modes **82**
- connection speed **84**
- port-location mapping **82**
- type of **84**

PMS billing **79**

- service selection messages **123**

PMS port settings **84**

PMS setup **83**

PMS transaction **187**

PMS transaction messages **187**

Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) **30**

Poland, Contact Information **7**

Port Forwarding **30**

Port Identifier **104**

port mapping **153**

- application type **155**
- port number **155**

portal page **145**

portal web site **145**

Port-Location Mapping **84, 103**

- backup **105**
- configuring **103**
- create mapping **104, 105**
- restore **105**

power specification **232**

PPPoE **30, 208**

- connect on demand **209**
- idle timeout **209**
- keep alive **209**
- Redial Period **209**

PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) **30**

PPTP **30, 209**

- connect on demand **210**
- connection ID **210**
- idle timeout **210**
- keep alive **210**
- Redial Period **210**

print dynamic subscriber account **99**

print reports **243**

printout preview **97**

problems **227**

product certifications **232**

product specifications **231**

- environmental **232**
- general **231**
- management **232**
- performance **232**
- physical **232**

Products **4**

Proof of Purchase **4**

Proper Operating Condition **4**

Property Management System (PMS) **29**

proxy **30**

Purchase, Proof of **4**

R

rack-mounting kit **35**

rack-mounting screws **35**

RADIUS **31, 75**

- accounting methods **72**
- secret key **76**

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) **31**

RADIUS authentication

- information window **125**

RADIUS server **239**

redirect subscriber login screen **120**

Registration **4**

Regular Mail **6**

Related Documentation **27**

Re-manufactured **4**

Repair **4**

Replace **4**

Replacement **4**

report printing on SP-200 **243**

- daily account summary **244**
- initial setup **243**
- key combination **243**
- monthly account summary **244**
- network statistics **247**
- system status **245**

reset **204, 228**

reset button, the **30, 36**

restart the VSG **204**

Restore **4**

- restore configuration file **223**
- restore factory defaults **204**

RFC 1631 **32, 65**

RFC2516 **30**

RJ-45 [249](#)
rubber feet [35](#)
Russia, Contact Information [7](#)

S

scenario option [77](#)
scheduled firmware upgrade [217](#)
Secure Socket Layer [189](#)
Secure Socket Layer (SSL) [30](#)
security [231](#)
serial console port [250](#)
server port [153](#)
server port number [229](#)
Service [4](#)
service selection messages [123](#)
session information [181](#)
 client computer [182](#)
 total entries [181](#)
 update interval [181](#)
session timeout messages [125](#)
session trace [167](#)
 example [169](#)
 filename convention [168](#)
 number of records [167](#)
 setup [167](#)
 TFTP server [168](#)
Setting up your computer's IP address [253](#)
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) [171](#)
SMT [199](#)
 accessing [199](#)
 basic configuration [199](#)
 current configuration [212](#)
 general system setup [202](#)
 idle timeout period [200](#)
 LAN setup [211](#)
 login [200](#)
 main menu [201](#)
 menu overview [201](#)
 navigating [201](#)
 navigation keystrokes [202](#)
 system status [212](#)
 WAN setup [207](#)
SNMP [171](#)
 community [173](#)
 components [171](#)
 Get [172](#)
 GetNext [172](#)
 management model [171](#)
 object variables [172](#)
 overview [171](#)
 privilege [173](#)

 protocol operations [172](#)
 Set [172](#)
 setup [172](#)
 Trap [172](#)
 versions supported [171](#)
SNMP agent [171](#)
SNMP manager [171](#)
SNMP port [173](#)
SP-200 [37](#), [47](#), [243](#)
 button labels [97](#)
 connecting [37](#)
 creating dynamic accounts [98](#)
 mapping profiles to buttons [95](#)
 report printing [243](#)
Spain, Contact Information [7](#)
specifications [231](#)
SSL [76](#), [189](#)
 activate [190](#)
 certificate [189](#)
 download certificate to VSG [189](#)
 install certificate [193](#)
 requirement [189](#)
SSL certificate information [179](#)
standard subscriber login screen [118](#)
statement printer [37](#), [86](#), [95](#), [97](#), [243](#)
static IP address [208](#)
Static Routing Topology [159](#)
static subscriber account [85](#)
 auto create [87](#)
 backup [89](#)
 create [86](#)
 display [94](#)
 edit [92](#)
 global settings [85](#)
 manual create [88](#)
 printout preview [93](#)
 restore [91](#)
status [177](#)
subnet [265](#)
 “Natural” mask [266](#)
 allowed IP address range [266](#)
 Class “A” [265](#)
 Class “B” [265](#)
 Class “C” [265](#)
 Class “D” [265](#)
 examples [267](#)
Subnet Mask [160](#)
subnet mask [266](#)
 alternative notation [267](#)
Subnetting [266](#)
subnetting [265](#), [266](#)
subscriber
 idle-timeout [76](#)
subscriber account [84](#)
 backup [89](#), [100](#)

- dynamic [84, 95](#)
- expiration [100](#)
- printout [129](#)
- restore [89](#)
- static [84, 85](#)
- types [84](#)
- subscriber account first login [94](#)
- subscriber authentication [117](#)
- subscriber database [31](#)
- subscriber information window [125](#)
- subscriber login [237](#)
 - information window [237](#)
- subscriber login page [32](#)
- subscriber login screen [117](#)
 - advanced [121](#)
 - credit card billing [109](#)
 - customize [117](#)
 - frame [122](#)
 - redirect [120](#)
 - standard [118](#)
- support documentation [27](#)
- Support E-mail [6](#)
- Supporting Disk [27](#)
- surrogate DHCP server [31](#)
- Sweden, Contact Information [7](#)
- synchronization check file [219](#)
- synchronization file [217, 219](#)
 - example [217](#)
- syslog [163](#)
 - on the LAN [163](#)
 - on the WAN [163](#)
- syslog server [164](#)
- syslog settings [163](#)
- system information [177](#)
- System Management Terminal (SMT) [199](#)
- system status [177, 245](#)

T

- Tampering [4](#)
- TCP/IP components [253](#)
- TCP/IP protocol [254](#)
- TCP/IP settings [253](#)
- Telephone [6](#)
- TFTP server [218](#)
- throughput [232](#)
- Time to Finish [72, 75](#)
- transaction key [109](#)
- trap port [173](#)
- traps [172](#)

- troubleshooting [227](#)
 - console port [228](#)
 - Internet access [229](#)
 - LAN port LEDs [227](#)
 - Power LED [227](#)
 - statement printer [230](#)
 - WAN port LEDs [228](#)
 - Web Configurator [229](#)
 - Web Configurator display [229](#)

U

- Ukraine, Contact Information [7](#)
- United Kingdom, Contact Information [7](#)
- uplink port [250](#)
- User Agreement [75](#)
- User Guide feedback [27](#)

V

- Value [4](#)
- Vendor Specific Attribute [239](#)
- Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) [31](#)
- vendor specific attributes (VSAs) [73](#)
- ventilation [35](#)
- virtual port [153, 154, 183](#)
- Virtual Private Network [66](#)
- Virtual Private Network (VPN) [30](#)
- VLAN [169](#)
- VLAN-enabled switch [103](#)
- VPN
 - single-connection-per-source limitation [67, 70](#)
 - types of connections [32](#)
- VSA [31, 73, 76, 239](#)
 - format [240](#)
 - related error messages [241](#)
 - vendor ID [76](#)
- VSG
 - reset to factory defaults [204](#)
 - restart [204](#)
- VSG (Vantage Service Gateway) [29](#)

W

- Walled Garden [31](#)
- walled garden [147](#)
 - example [148](#)

- important note [147](#)
- WAN port
 - cable pin assignment [249](#)
- WAN port, the [36](#), [37](#), [249](#)
- Warranty [4](#)
- Warranty Period [4](#)
- Web Configurator [32](#)
 - recommended web browser [32](#)
- Web configurator
 - Administrator login [42](#)
- web server port [203](#)
- Web Site [6](#)
- web-based configurator [32](#)
- winipcfg [256](#)
- Workmanship [4](#)
- Worldwide Contact Information [6](#)

Z

- ZyXEL Limited Warranty
 - Note [4](#)